

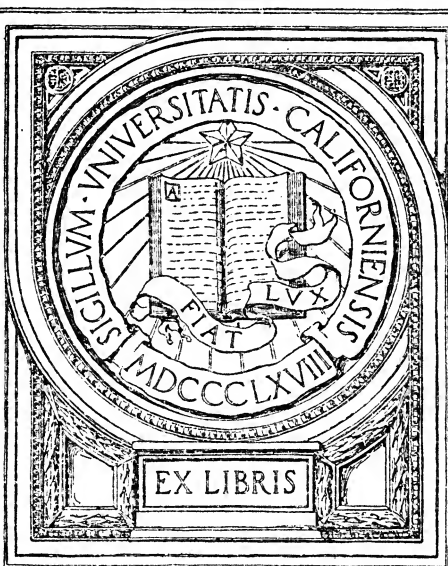
UC-NRLF



\$B 306 767

IN MEMORIAM

A. F. Lange



EX LIBRIS

Education Department

Tues - 6 above

Wed 10 above

Thurs 6 above

Fri 4 above

Sat 46 above

Sun 6 above

Mon 14 above

Mamie O. Ticknor.

Jan. 1894

High School.

Helena. Mont.

life = vita, spiritus
anima.

dear = charus, dilectus

exam^{er} = recipio

last^{adver.} = proxime.

welcome = gratus

short time = brevis

The infinitive
with the subject
Acc is used after
verbs of knowing

Thank you

70-
61
73
3126951
25
2145-
72
31240

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, CHASE AND STUART,
GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND "EXERCISES IN
GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1892

TO THE
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1877,
By S. O. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

Prof. A. F. Lange
to Education Dept.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON
CAMBRIDGE.

P R E F A C E .

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions ; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence ; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	xii
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS	1
LESSON I. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION	3
LESSON II. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	4
Declension of <i>deŭ</i> and <i>filiŭ</i> .	
LESSON III. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION	6
Nouns in <i>ŭs</i> ; Gender.	
LESSON IV. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	7
Nouns in <i>r</i> and <i>um</i> . — Prepositions used with the Ablative.	
LESSON V. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	9
Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>iŭs</i> or <i>iŭm</i> ; Vocative of <i>filiŭs</i> and proper names in <i>iŭs</i> ; Declension of <i>deŭs</i> . — Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sŭb</i> .	
LESSON VI. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	11
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	
LESSON VII. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (continued)	12
Genitive in <i>iŭs</i> and Dative in <i>i</i> .	
LESSON VIII. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION	14
LESSON IX. — VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS	15
LESSON X. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION	16
Personal Endings of the Active Voice; Present Stem; Present Indicative Active of <i>ŕmŏ</i> .	
LESSON XI. — THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	18
Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verb. — Direct Object.	
LESSON XII. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION (continued)	19
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>ŕmŏ</i> .	
LESSON XIII. — MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS	21
LESSON XIV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; THE PERFECT STEM	23
LESSON XV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	25
LESSON XVI. — VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE	26

LESSON XVII. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	27
Infinitive as Object ; Subject of the Infinitive.	
LESSON XVIII. — GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS .	29
LESSON XIX. — THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS	31
LESSON XX. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	32
LESSON XXI. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	33
Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.	
LESSON XXII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	35
LESSON XXIII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	36
LESSON XXIV. — CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM	38
LESSON XXV. — PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	38
LESSON XXVI. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	40
LESSON XXVII. — COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COM- POUNDS	41
LESSON XXVIII. — CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	43
Infinitive without Subject Accusative.	
LESSON XXIX. — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO	44
LESSON XXX. — REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES	46
LESSON XXXI. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO	48
Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	
LESSON XXXII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	49
LESSON XXXIII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	51
LESSON XXXIV. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMO	52
LESSON XXXV. — DEPONENT VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION	53
LESSON XXXVI. — ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COM- POUND SENTENCES	55
LESSON XXXVII. — ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION	56
LESSON XXXVIII. — ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION (<i>con- tinued</i>)	58
LESSON XXXIX. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	59
Declension of Comparatives.	
LESSON XL. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>)	61
LESSON XLI. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	62
LESSON XLII. — ADVERBS	64
Definition ; Derivation ; Classification ; Syntax.	
LESSON XLIII. — VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE	66
LESSON XLIV. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	67
Accusative of Time.	

LESSON XLV.—VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	69
LESSON XLVI.—DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION	70
LESSON XLVII.—FOURTH DECLENSION	72
Declension of <i>dōmūs</i> .	
LESSON XLVIII.—FIFTH DECLENSION	73
LESSON XLIX.—VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE	74
LESSON L.—VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	76
LESSON LI.—VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION : ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES	78
LESSON LII.—THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN <i>IO</i>	79
LESSON LIII.—DEPONENT VERBS : THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	80
Ablative with certain Deponents.	
LESSON LIV.—GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE	82
Place to which ; Place at or in which ; Place from which.	
LESSON LV.—NUMERALS.—EXTENT IN SPACE	84
LESSON LVI.—COMPOUND NOUNS.—ABLATIVE OF TIME	86
LESSON LVII.—PRONOUNS : PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE	87
LESSON LVIII.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : DEMONSTRATIVE	89
LESSON LIX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : RELATIVE	90
Declension ; Agreement.	
LESSON LX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE	92
Declension of <i>āliquīs</i> .	
LESSON LXI.—CONJUNCTIONS	93
LESSON LXII.—CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	95
LESSON LXIII.—PARTICIPLES	96
Definitions ; Distinctions of Tense ; Used for a Subordinate Clause.	
LESSON LXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	98
LESSON LXV.—IRREGULAR VERBS : FERO	100
LESSON LXVI.—COMPOUNDS OF FERO.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	101
LESSON LXVII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS	103
LESSON LXVIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : EO AND FIO	105
LESSON LXIX.—DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS	106
Infinitive as Subject.	
LESSON LXX.—THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT	108

LESSON LXXI. — USE OF THE DATIVE	110
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.	
LESSON LXXII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE .	112
Ablative with Comparatives. — Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.	
LESSON LXXIII. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES	114
LESSON LXXIV. — USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	116
Dative of the Person possessing ; Two Datives.	
LESSON LXXV. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES . .	118
LESSON LXXVI. — USE OF THE GENITIVE	120
Genitive with Adjectives ; Genitive in Predicate ; Genitive with certain Verbs.	
LESSON LXXVII. — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	122
LESSON LXXVIII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE	124
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference ; Ablative of Quality.	
LESSON LXXIX. — CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	126
LESSON LXXX. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	128
Ablative of Price ; Ablative of Distance ; Ablative with Adjectives.	
LESSON LXXXI. — CAUSAL CLAUSES	130
LESSON LXXXII. — TEMPORAL CLAUSES	132
LESSON LXXXIII. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS .	134
LESSON LXXXIV. — ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE	136
LESSON LXXXV. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	138
LESSON LXXXVI. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	139
LESSON LXXXVII. — THE GERUND	140
LESSON LXXXVIII. — THE GERUNDIVE	142
LESSON LXXXIX. — THE SUPINE	144
LESSON XC. — THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS .	146
LESSON XCI. — GENERAL EXERCISE	148
LESSON XCII. — GENERAL EXERCISE	150
SELECTIONS FOR READING.	
I. FABLES	153
II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY	156
GENERAL VOCABULARY.	
I. LATIN-ENGLISH	167
II. ENGLISH-LATIN	211

TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.

I. Moods.

1. Principal Clauses : Statements.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE.	
<i>Indicative</i>	becomes	<i>Infinitive.</i>	
<i>Active Subjunctive</i> in the apod- osis of a conditional sentence }	becomes	{ <i>Future Active Participle</i> with <i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse.</i>	
<i>Passive Subjunctive</i> in the apod- osis of a conditional sentence }	becomes	{ <i>fore</i> , or <i>futūrum esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i> , with <i>ut</i> and the <i>subjunctive.</i>	

2. Principal Clauses : Questions.

<i>Indicative</i> , 1st or 3d person, . . .	becomes	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>Indicative</i> , 2d person, . . .	becomes	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive.</i>

3. Principal Clauses : Commands or Prohibitions.

<i>Imperative</i>	becomes	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Subjunctive.</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive.</i>

4. Subordinate Clauses of All Kinds.

<i>Indicative</i>	becomes	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Subjunctive.</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive.</i>

II. Tenses.

1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i> } . . . become	{ <i>Present</i> , often <i>Imperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Imperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Present</i> , when made dependent upon an Historical Tense.
<i>Future</i> }	
<i>Perfect</i> } . . . become	{ <i>Perfect</i> , often <i>Pluperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Pluperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Perfect</i> , after an Historical Tense.
<i>Future-Perfect</i> }	
<i>Imperfect</i>	remains <i>Imperfect.</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	remains <i>Pluperfect.</i>

2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse passes into an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i>	remains	<i>Present.</i>
<i>Future</i> or <i>Future-Perfect</i> . . .	becomes	<i>Future Participle</i> with <i>esse.</i>
<i>Perfect</i> }		
<i>Imperfect</i> }	become	<i>Perfect.</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i> }		

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indecl., indeclinable.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indef., indefinite.
abl., ablative.	interrog., interrogative.
acc., accusative.	lit., literal, literally.
act., active.	LN., Lesson.
adj., adjective.	m., masculine.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.	n., neuter.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.	num., numeral.
C., Chase's Latin Grammar.	part., participle.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	pass., passive.
comp., comparative.	perf., perfect.
conj., conjunction.	pers., person.
dat., dative.	pl., plural.
dem., demonstrative.	poss., possessive.
dep., deponent.	prep., preposition.
Ex., Example.	pres., present.
f., feminine.	pron., pronoun.
fr., from.	Ref., Reference.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.	rel., relative.
gen., genitive.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, revised edition of 1881.	sing., singular.
ind., indicative.	subst., substantive.
	voc., vocative.
	VY., Vocabulary.
	w., with.

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar are now given in the body of the book.

The references to the Grammars of Harkness, Gildersleeve, Allen and Greenough, and Andrews and Stoddard, have been adapted to the latest editions, and references to Chase and Stuart's Latin Grammar have been added.

APRIL 20, 1889.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. 1, *a*; 2; 3: A. & S. 3-7; 9-12: B. 3-10, *w. fine print under 6 and 7*: B. & M. 3; 5; 6; 7: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, *w. fine print under 3 and 4*: C. 1, 2.

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (a) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 14, *a-d*; 16: A. & S. 15-22: B. 11-15; 16-21: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 5-8: C. 3, I.; 4; 5.

(b) *English Method.* A. & G. 17, *a-c*, and NOTE: B. 377, *the whole*: B. & M. 11; 12; 13, 1-6: H. 9-14, *w. fine print*: C. 3, II.; 5.

(c) *Continental Method.* B. & M. 14, 1-5; 13, 1-6: H. 15: C. 3, III.; 5.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, *a-f*; 5, *fine print*: A. & S. 26-29; 37 NOTE 1: 38-44: B. 12, *a-c*: B. & M. 8; 16-19: G. 2, 2; 10-13, REMARK 1: H. 16, I.-III., and NOTES 2-4: C. 7; 8.

4. Accent. A. & G. 19, *a-c*, *w. Def.*: A. & S. 25 NOTE 1; 30-35: B. 22-25: B. & M. 20, *w. fine print*: G. 14: H. 17; 18: C. 9; 11.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20; 21; 25, *a-i*; 26; 27: A. & S. 54; 55; 73; 74: B. 26-33; 34-40; 115: B. & M. 24; 25, 1, 2; 26, 1, 2, *Obs.* 1-2; 27-30: C. 15-17, *the whole*: H. 37-40: C. 12.

6. Gender. A. & G. 28, *a, b*; 29; 30: A. & S. 78-83: B. 116-118, I.-III.: B. & M. 32-35: G. 18; 19, I.-III.; 20, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I., II.: C. 13.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a-g*, NOTE, *h*: A. & S. 85-88, *a*: B. 119-120, *w. fine print*: B. & M. 31, 42, 4. Case; 43, *w. fine print*: G. 21-24: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print*: C. 14.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *b*: B. 121; 122, REM. 1-5; 123: B. & M. 44-46, *w. fine print*; 47; 50, Dec. I.: G. 25-26, *the whole*: H. 46, *w. fine print*; 47, *with* NOTE 3: C. 15; 17.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to "LESSON I." and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2**," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2**," and divide the words which they form into syllables. *Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.*

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35; 36, c: A. & S. 91-93: B. 121; 123; 124: B. & M. 46; 48, First; 51; 53: G. 24; 27, REMARK 2; 28: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 4: C. 19; 18, I.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae, ¹ f. ²	cause, reason.
Gĕnăvă, ae, f.	Geneva. ³
glōriă, ae, f.	glory.
linguă, ae, f.	tongue, language.
mĕmōriă, ae, f.	memory.
rîpă, ae, f.	bank (of a stream).
viă, ae, f.	way, road.

¹ ae is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of causă, substitute ae for final ă: e. g. Nom. causă, Gen. causae.

² In the Vocabularies, f. stands for *feminine gender*, m. for *masculine*, and n. for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causă.² 2. Glōriărŭm.³ 3. Rîpae. 4. Linguă.⁴
5. Mëmōriă.⁵ 6. Linguās. 7. Viă. 8. Rîpās. 9. Mëmōriæ.
10. Glōriæ. 11. Causās. 12. Viăm. 13. Mëmōriās.
14. Viă. 15. Glōriăm. 16. Linguărŭm. 17. Causīs.
18. Rîpă. 19. Gĕnăvæ.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory.
4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language.
7. O Memory. 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks. 10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an*, or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. *causă* may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of *glōriărŭm* is accented? Why? (4) — *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *linguă*? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. *mëmōriă*, *in memory*; *linguă*, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. *Rōmæ*, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.



LESSON II.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of deă and filiă. A. & G. 36, e: A. & S. 93 e: B. 124, REM 1: B. & M. 57: G. 27, REMARK 3: H. 49, 4: C. 19, 6.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260 : A. & S. 428 : B. 329, RULE LXXX. : B. & M. 981 : G. 417 : H. 432 : C. 131.

VOCABULARY.

ăd , prep. w. acc. ¹	<i>to.</i>
angustiae , ² ărur , f.	<i>narrow pass.</i>
circũm , prep. w. acc.	<i>around.</i>
deă , ae, f.	<i>goddess.</i>
filiă , ae, f.	<i>daughter.</i>
Mătrõnă , ae, m.	<i>the Marne.</i>
pěr , prep. w. acc.	<i>through.</i>
prõvinciă , ae, f.	<i>province.</i>
silvă , ae, f.	<i>forest.</i>
trans , prep. w. acc.	<i>across.</i>

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that **ăd** is a preposition used with the Accusative.

² **angustiae** is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rĩpăm.¹ 2. Ad rĩpăm Matrõnae.² 3. Trans Matrõnăm. 4. Deă.³ 5. Deae. 6. Deărũm. 7. Deăbũs. 8. Trans viăm. 9. Pěr angustiăs.⁴ 10. Pěr silvăs. 11. Pěr prõvinciăm. 12. Circũm Gẽnăvăm. 13. Silvărũm. 14. In silvĩs.⁵ 15. Ad filiăs deărũm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter. 2. A daughter. 3. O daughter. 4. To the daughter of a goddess. 5. To⁶ the Marne. 6. To⁶ the banks of the Marne. 7. For the daughters. 8. Through the provinces. 9. Through the forest. 10. In⁵ the forest. 11. In⁷ the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

² Give the rule for gender of **Matrōnă**. (6)

³ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of **angustias**? Why? (3) Which syllable then has the accent? (4)

⁵ See LN. V., 19 and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between **silvă** and **silvā**? In Latin the prep. **in** usually precedes the place *where*.

⁶ Translate by the proper preposition.

⁷ See LN. I., NOTE 5.



LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ūs. A. & G. 38, servūs; 40, a: A. & S. 95, dōmīnūs; 97 (3): B. 126; 127, dōmīnūs, REM. 4: B. & M. 59; 61, dōmīnūs: G. 29, hortūs, REMARK 4: H. 51, servūs, 1, 2, 1)–3), 8: C. 21 (dōmīnūs), 1; 18, II.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39: A. & S. 95: B. 127, REM. 3: B. & M. 71: G. 30: H. 51: C. 21; 24.

VOCABULARY.

antē, prep. w. acc.	before.
āmīcitiā, ae, f.	friendship.
āmīcūs, ī, m.	friend.
carrūs, ī, m.	cart, wagon.
contrā, prep. w. acc.	against.
Germānī, ōrūm, m.	the Germans.
lēgātūs, ī, m.	legate, lieutenant.
nūmērūs, ī, m.	number.
ōcūlūs, ī, m.	eye.
pōpūlūs, ī, m.	people.
Rhēnūs, ī, m.	the Rhine.
Rhōdānūs, ī, m.	the Rhone.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pōpūlī.¹
2. Pōpūlē.
3. Pōpūlis.
4. Amīcitiā pōpūlī.
5. Antē ōcūlōs pōpūlī.
6. Nūmērūs carrōrūm.
7. Nūmē-

rūs Germānōrūm. 8. Nūmērūs āmicōrūm. 9. Nūmērūs filiārūm. 10. Filiā lēgātī.² 11. Amīcō pōpūlī. 12. Contrā āmicūm pōpūlī. 13. Contrā lēgātōs pōpūlī. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm. 15. Pōpūlī³ āmicīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against a friend. 5. Of friends. 6. The friends of the Germans. 7. Against the friends of the Germans. 8. Before the eyes of the Germans. 9. Across the Rhine. 10. Before the lieutenant's² eyes. 11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of **pōpūlī**? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (**14**) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (**6**)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: **filiā lēgātī** is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

³ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., **filiā āmicī**, *the friend's daughter*; but **āmicī filiā**, *the friend's daughter*.

LESSON IV.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in r and um. A. & G. 38: A. & S. 95: B. 127, a, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 60; 61; 63: G. 29; 31: H. 51, 2, 3)–6), 4, 1): C. 21, 1, 2; 22.

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b: A. & S. 430: B. 178: B. & M. 470: G. 418: H. 434: C. 186.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, āb, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
āgēr, āgrī, m.	<i>field, territory.</i>
bellūm, ī, n.	<i>war.</i>
cūm, prep. w. abl.	<i>with.</i>
ē, ex, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>out of.</i>
frūmentūm, ī, n.	<i>corn.</i>
gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
Helvētīī, ōrum, m.	<i>the Helvetii.</i>
puēr, puērī, m.	<i>boy.</i>
regnūm, ī, n.	<i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i>
sīnē, prep. w. abl.	<i>without.</i>
tēplūm, ī, n.	<i>temple.</i>
vīr, vīrī, m.	<i>man.</i>

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **āb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse¹ the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Puērī,² puērōrūm. 2. Gēnērō, gēnērīs. 3. Agrī Helvētīōrūm. 4. Cūm vīrīs. 5. Sīnē vīrīs. 6. Ex templō.³
7. Cūm Helvētīīs. 8. Sīnē regnō. 9. Sīnē frūmentō.⁴
10. Bellūm cūm Germānīs. 11. Ex prōvinciā. 12. Ab Helvētīīs. 13. Pēr agrōs Helvētīōrūm. 14. E Rhōdānō.⁵
15. Cūm āmicō Helvētīōrūm. 16. Regnūm Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars. 2. For the war, for the wars. 3. The wars with the Helvetii. 4. By the Germans. 5. Without friendship. 6. With the man's⁶ daughters. 7. Without the boys. 8. O boys. 9. Before the war with the Germans. 10. Without wagons. 11. Out of the Rhine. 12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Form for parsing a noun.—**cūm vīrīs**: **vīrīs** masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *vīro*; declined, *vīr, vīrī, vīrō, vīrūm, vīr, vīrō*;

plural, *virī, virōrum, virīs, virōs, viri, viris*; it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition *cū*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in *r* drop? *Ans.* The Nominative *ūs* and the Vocative *ē*. To which declension does *puērī* belong? Why? *prōvinciā*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (8)

³ Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in *ā*.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *frūmentō*? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (3 and 4)

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent?

⁶ See LN. III., NOTE 2.

LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in *iūs* or *iūm* generally form the Genitive Singular with one *i*, while the accent remains unchanged: *Cassī, of Cassius*; *fili, of the son*; *consili, of counsel*.

18. *Vocative of filiūs and proper names in iūs.* A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 97 (5): B. 128, a: B. & M. 65: G. 29, 2: H. 51, 5: C. 23, 3.

19. *Use of in and sub.* A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 431: B. 179: B. & M. 987; 988: G. 419: H. 435, I.: C. 131, 3.

20. *deūs* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Gen. <i>deī,</i>	<i>deōrum, deūm.</i>
Dat. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>
Acc. <i>deūm,</i>	<i>deōs.</i>
Voc. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Abl. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>

VOCABULARY.

<i>Cassiūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Cassius.</i>
<i>castrūm, ī, n.</i>	<i>fort; pl. camp.</i>

conciliūm, ī, n.	<i>council, assembly.</i>
consiliūm, ī, n.	<i>counsel, plan.</i>
deūs, ī, m. (see 20),	<i>god.</i>
ēquūs, ī, m.	<i>horse.</i>
ēt, conj.	<i>and.</i>
filiūs, ī, m.	<i>son.</i>
īn, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>into, in.</i>
jūgūm, ī, n.	<i>yoke.</i>
Lūciūs, ī, m.	<i>Lucius.</i>
oppidūm, ī, n.	<i>town.</i>
sūb, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>under.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ēt¹ deās. 2. Cūm deīs ēt deābūs. 3. Antē ōcūlōs deōrūm ēt deārūm. 4. In² oppidō. 5. In² oppidūm. 6. In castrā³ Germānōrūm. 7. Consiliō⁴ deōrūm. 8. Sīnē consiliīs. 9. In conciliō Helvētiōrūm. 10. Sūb jūgūm. 11. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs. 12. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs Lūcī. 13. Filiūs Lūcī Cassī. 14. Fili⁵ Lūcī Cassī. 15. Pēr oppidā Germānōrūm.⁶ 16. Germānōrūm⁶ oppidā. 17. Trans Rhēnūm ēt Rhōdānūm. 18. Gēnēr Lūcī. 19. Cassī.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters. 2. With sons and daughters. 3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters. 4. Into² the towns of the Germans. 5. In² the Germans' camp.³ 6. Into the council of the Germans. 7. By the plans of the gods. 8. O son⁵ of Cassius. 9. O Cassius.⁵ 10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ēt** is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. **ēt** connects similar constructions; hence **deās** is governed the same as **deōs** by **ād**.

² Observe carefully the difference in meaning between **īn** used with the Accusative and **īn** used with the Ablative.

³ Observe that **castrūm** means in the Singular *a fort*, but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

⁴ See 17.

⁵ See 18 and A. & G. 241: A. & S. 402: B. 210, RULE VI.: B. & M. 974: G. 194, REM. 3: H. 369: C. 120, 2.

⁶ What is the difference between *oppidā Germānōrūm* and *Germānōrūm oppidā*? LN. III., NOTE 3.

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of *bōnūs* (*cārūs*). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 143: B. 154; 155, 1: B. & M. 189; 190, 1: G. 15, I., 2; 33: H. 146-148: C. 39.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 332: B. 266, RULE LI.: B. & M. 650: G. 285: H. 438: C. 113, 1.

VOCABULARY.

<i>bōnūs</i> , ā, ¹ ūm, ¹	<i>good.</i>
<i>cārūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>dear, beloved.</i>
<i>exemplūm</i> , ī, n.	<i>example.</i>
<i>lacrīmā</i> , ae, f.	<i>tear.</i>
<i>magnūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>great, big, large.</i>
<i>mālūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>bad.</i>
<i>multūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>much; pl. many.</i>
<i>parvūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
<i>rēliquūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>remaining.</i>
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>Roman.</i>

¹ ā and ūm are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed *bōnūs*, *bōnā*, *bōnūm*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Vīr bōnūs,¹ filiā bōnā,² exemplūm bōnūm. 2. Vīrī mālī, filiae³ mālāe, exemplā mālā. 3. Cūm filiā cārā. 4. Cūm filiīs⁴ cārīs. 5. Glōriā magnā Lūcī Cassī.⁴ 6. Exemplō pōpūlī Rōmānī. 7. Multīs cūm lacrimīs. 8. Puērī

multī ēt parvī.⁵ 9. Oppīdā multā ēt magnā. 10. Pēr multōs agrōs. 11. In rēliquā oppīdā. 12. Amīcūs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 13. Cūm amīcīs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciām magnām. 15. Carrī multī ēt parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrūm. ✓

Write in Latin.

1. Through small⁶ fields. 2. Through small towns. 3. Through a small province. 4. Through the remaining towns. 5. The friendship of the Roman⁷ people. 6. Many good boys.⁵ 7. Many beloved daughters. 8. Many bad men. 9. In a large temple. 10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vīr bōnūs** : **bōnūs** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions ; Stems, **BŌNO** and **BŌNA** ; declined, *bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm* ; *bōnī, bōnae, bōnī* ; *bōnō, bōnae, bōnō* ; *bōnūm, bōnām, bōnūm* ; *bōnē, bōnā, bōnūm* ; *bōnō, bōnā, bōnō* ; Plural, *bōnī, bōnae, bōnā* ; *bōnōrūm, bōnārūm, bōnōrūm* ; *bōnīs, bōnīs, bōnīs* ; *bōnōs, bōnās, bōnā* ; *bōnī, bōnae, bōnā* ; *bōnīs, bōnīs, bōnīs* ; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vīr** ; rule (22). Repeat the rule.

² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

³ What irregularity in declension have **deā** and **filiā** ?

⁴ What irregularities in declension have **filiūs** and **Cassiūs** ? (17 and 18)

⁵ The Romans wrote **multī ēt parvī**, *many AND small* ; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.



LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82 : A. & S. 143 : B. 155, 2, 3 : B. & M. 190, 2, 3 : G. 34 : H. 149, 150 : C. 39.

24. Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*. A. & G. 83, a : A. & S. 145 ; 146 : B. 155, 4, REM. 1 : B. & M. 191 : G. 35, REMARK : H. 155, 1 : C. 41.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i* should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aēgēr</i> , <i>aegrā</i> , <i>aegrūm</i> ,	<i>sick.</i>
<i>ālīūs</i> , <i>ālīā</i> , <i>ālīūd</i> ,	<i>other, another.</i>
<i>lībēr</i> , <i>liberā</i> , <i>liberūm</i> ,	<i>free.</i>
<i>mīsēr</i> , <i>miserā</i> , <i>miserūm</i> ,	<i>wretched.</i>
<i>nullūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>none, no.</i>
<i>pulchēr</i> , <i>pulchrā</i> , <i>pulchrūm</i> ,	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>sōlūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>alone.</i>
<i>tēnēr</i> , <i>tēnerā</i> , <i>tēnerūm</i> ,	<i>tender, delicate.</i>
<i>tōtūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>whole, entire.</i>
<i>ullūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>any.</i>
<i>ūnūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>one.</i>

Pronounce ; translate ; parse the adjectives.

1. Cūm filiīs tēnērīs. 2. Ad vīrōs aegrōs.¹ 3. Ad āliōs vīrōs aegrōs. 4. Pēr agrōs pulchrōs. 5. Ab Helvētiīs libērīs. 6. Contrā lēgātūm mīsērūm. 7. Filiae multae ēt pulchrae.² 8. Filiārūm pulchrārūm. 9. Filiūs ēt filiābūs pulchrīs. 10. Vīrī multī ēt mīsērī. 11. Tōtīs castrīs.³ 12. Pēr Helvētiōs sōlōs. 13. Unā pēr Helvētiōs viā. 14. Aliā⁴ viā nullā. 15. Ullā sīnē causā. 16. Aliī āmīcō. 17. Aliī āmīcī. 18. Alius āmīcī. 19. Unūs ē filiīs⁵ Cassī. 20. In⁶ āliūd⁷ oppīdūm.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How does *filiūs Cassī* differ from *Cassī filiūs* ? (LN. III., NOTE 3). How does *ad vīrōs aegrōs* differ from *ad aegrōs vīrōs* ? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

² See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

³ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of *ālīūs* ? The Genitive Singular ? The Dative Singular ?

⁵ Translate *ūnūs ē filiīs* as if it read *ūnūs filiōrūm*.

⁶ How is *in* to be rendered when used with the Ablative ?

⁷ What adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i* ?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183 : A. & S. 324 : B. 265, RULE L. : B. & M. 622 : G. 318 ; 319 : H. 359, NOTE 2 ; 363 : C. 112.

EXAMPLES.

1. *ad oppidum Gēnāvām* (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. *Tītus Lābiēnūs lēgātūs* (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificiūm</i> , i, n.	<i>building, edifice.</i>
<i>armă</i> , ¹ ōrūm, n.	<i>arms, weapons.</i>
<i>Belgae</i> , ārūm, m.	<i>the Belgae.</i>
<i>cōpiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>plenty ; pl. troops.</i>
<i>Galliā</i> , ae, f.	<i>Gaul.</i>
<i>Lābiēnūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Labienus.</i>
<i>lōcūs</i> , ² i, m.	<i>place.</i>
<i>mātūrūs</i> , a, um,	<i>ripe.</i>
<i>pēriculūm</i> , i, n.	<i>danger.</i>
<i>privātūs</i> , a, um,	<i>private.</i>
<i>Sēquānī</i> , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Sequani.</i>
<i>Tītūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Titus.</i>
<i>victōriā</i> , ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>

¹ *armă*, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² *lōcūs* is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows : Nom., *lōcī* and *lōcā* ; Gen., *lōcōrūm* ; Dat., *lōcīs* ; Acc., *lōcōs* and *lōcā* ; Voc., *lōcī* and *lōcā* ; Abl., *lōcīs*.

Pronounce ; translate ; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. *Ad Tītūm*¹ *Lābiēnūm lēgātūm.*⁷
2. *Cūm filiābūs*² *pulchris Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.*
3. *Pēr agrōs magnōs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.*
4. *Ex oppidō Gēnāvā.*³
5. *In oppidūm Gēnāvām.*
6. *Magnō cūm pēriculō.*
7. *Rēliquā privātā aedificiā.*
8. *Frūmentūm mātūrūm in agrīs.*
9. *Cōpiā frūmentī mātūrī*

in agrīs. 10. In Galliām, in Galliā. 11. Ex⁴ Galliā, ā⁴ Galliā. 12. Victōriā magnā Sēquānōrū. 13. Cūm cōpiīs Belgārū. 14. Trans Rhōdānū⁵ īn Galliām. 15. Pēr multā lōcā. 16. Pērīcūlūm deōrū et deārū. 17. Nullā victōriā sinē armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³ 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)

² What irregular case-endings have *deā* and *filiā*? (11)

³ See 25 and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ *ē*, *ex* signifies *out of*, *from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; *ā*, *āb*, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent? Why? (4) Which of *Sēquānī*?

⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used *only* with the Ablative? Which with *both* the Ablative and Accusative? When are *īn* and *sūb* used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (16, 19)

⁷ See A. & G. 184.



LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a-d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276.

A. & S. 190-193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, *a, b*; 461.

B. 26; 41, *b*; 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. 258; 259, 1-3; 262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079; 1080.

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

C. 64; 188; 66, 1, or 189.

LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. *Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.*

A. & G. 21; 116, SING., PLUR.: A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1): B. 64, *a*; 69: B. & M. 333, ACTIVE VOICE; 274: G. 111: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250: C. pp. 102, 104.

28. *The Present Stem*¹ is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *rē* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and *ērē* in the Third: e. g. *PUTĀrē* is a Present Infinitive Active and *PUTA* its Present Stem; so *DIC* from *DĪCērē*.

29. Learn the *conjugation*² and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of *āmō*. A. & G. 128: A. & S. 222: B. 74: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1: C. 74.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (27) to the Present Stem (28); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination *ō*, which absorbs the final stem-vowel *a*.

VOCABULARY.

āmō, āmārē,

convōcō, convōcārē,

confirmō, confirmārē,

importō, importārē,

occūpō, occūpārē,

vastō, vastārē,

*love.*³

call together, summon.

establish, strengthen.

bring in, import.

seize, occupy.

lay waste, devastate.

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.⁴

1. Importās,⁵ importātīs, importāmūs. 2. Amāmūs, āmant, āmāt. 3. Convōcō, convōcās, convōcāt. 4. Convōcāmūs, convōcātīs, convōcant. 5. Confirmant, confirmātīs, confirmāmūs. 6. Confirmāt, confirmās, confirmō. 7. Occūpō, āmās, importāt. 8. Importō, āmātīs, occūpant. 9. Occūpāmūs, importātīs, āmō. 10. Occūpās, occūpāt, occūpātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, ^{as} he is loving. 2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. — 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root*.

² The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

³ Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

⁴ The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. **āmāmūs** has the stem **āmā**, signifying *love*, and the personal ending **mūs**, signifying *we*.

⁵ **importās** may be rendered *you are importing*, *you do import*, or *you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

⁶ What is the Present Stem of **pūtārē**? What does the personal ending **nt** signify? **mūs**? **s**? **tīs**? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 309-311: B. 203, a-g: B. & M. 616, 1, 4-10; 618-620: G. 192; 193: H. 346; 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360: C. 107; 108; 108, 1, 2, 3, 6.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 316: B. 205, RULE I.: B. & M. 633: G. 194: H. 368: C. 109.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 316: B. 287, RULE LV.: B. & M. 634: G. 202: H. 460: C. 110, 1.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 392: B. 212, RULE VII.: B. & M. 712: G. 329: H. 371: C. 121, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. Puēr (subject) āmāt (predicate), *the boy loves.*
2. Tītūs concīliūm¹ (direct object) convōcāt, *Titus summons a council.*

VOCABULARY.

dē, prep. w. abl.,	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
expugnō, expugnārē,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
Gallūs, ī, m.	<i>a Gaul.</i>
impēriūm, ī, n.	<i>empire, supreme power.</i>
pugnō, pugnārē,	<i>fight, contend.</i>
Rōmānūs, ī, m.	<i>a Roman.</i>
servūs, ī, m.	<i>slave.</i>
vexō, vexārē,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassiūs² oppidūm³ expugnāt.⁴
2. Helvētīi oppidūm expugnant.
3. Gallī tōtūm⁵ oppidūm occūpant.
4. Gallī multā oppidā occūpant.
5. Sēquānī agrōs vasant.
6. Agrōs pulchrōs vastāmūs.⁶
7. Agrōs magnōs vastās.
8. Cassiūs concīliūm⁷ convōcāt.
9. Germānī Gallōs vexant.
10. Rō-

mānī oppīdūm Gēnāvām⁸ expugnant. 11. Tītūs Lābiēnūs
lēgātūs oppīdūm occūpāt. 12. Rōmānī dē impēriō⁹ pugnant.
13. Dē impēriō pugnāmūs. 14. Dē impēriō pugnātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰ 3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹ 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., NOTE 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expugnāt* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*?

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vastāmūs* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.*
vastā - mūs.

⁷ See 17.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ See 16.

¹⁰ See LN. X., NOTE 5.



LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *āmō*.
A. & G. 118 (*for endings*); 128 (*for conjugation*): A. & S. 222;
224 1, 2: B. 72, *Indicative*; 74: B. & M. 282: G. 111, 1-3;
119: H. 205; 247, 1; 243: C. p. 102 (*for endings*); p. 76 (*for conjugation*).

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 57: B. & M. 1087; 1090: G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470: C. 66, 2, 3.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, **ba** in the Imperfect and **bī** in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination **o**, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future **u** takes the place of **i**.

VOCABULARY.

Aquīlēiā , ae, f.	<i>Aquileia.</i>
Aquītāniā , ae, f.	<i>Aquitania.</i>
Aquītānī , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Aquitani.</i>
circūm , prep. w. acc.	<i>around, near.</i>
Helvētiūs , ā, ūm,	<i>of the Helvetii.</i>
hiēmō , hiēmārē,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
sūpērō , sūpērārē,	<i>overcome.</i>

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Tītus regnum occūpāt. 2. Tītus regnum occūpābāt.
 3. Tītus regnum occūpābīt. 4. Regnum occūpābāmūs.
 5. Regnum occūpābīmūs. 6. Regnum occūpābō. 7. Cō-
 pia² circūm Aquīlēiam³ hiēmābant. 8. Aquītāni circūm
 Gēnāvam hiēmābunt. 9. Aquītānos sūpērābīs. 10. Rōmāni
 Helvētios sūpērābunt. 11. Galli multa lōca⁴ in Aquītāniā⁵
 occūpant. 12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall over-
 come. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will
 storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming
 the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans
 will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are
 passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting
 for⁶ empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are the *stem*, *tense-sign*, *personal ending*: e. g. ^{love will you} *āmā - bī - tīs* has the Stem *āmā*, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign *bī*, *will*; the Personal Ending *tīs*, *you*.

² What meaning has *cōpia* in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See 12.

⁴ Decline *lōcā*. LN. VIII., Vy., 2.

⁵ See 19.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning*, *about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete* action.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a, b*; 179: B. 288, *a*: B. & M. 1401, 1-4; 1405, II., 1-4: H. 357, 1; 359, NOTE 1; 361, 1: C. 108, 5.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 374, (2): B. 239, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. 818; 819: G. 344: H. 384, I., II.: C. 149; 150.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 351: B. 226; 230, RULE XIX.: B. & M. 751: G. 357; 358; 360: H. 395: C. 133.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tītus Lābiēnus lēgātus consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt*,¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. *Cassius Tīto filiam in mātirimōnium dāt*,² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, *Tītus Lābiēnus* is the *subject* and is modified by *lēgātus*, an *appositive*; *consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt* is the *predicate* and is made up of the verb *ēnunciāt* and its modifier *consilia*, a *direct object*; *consilia* is modified by *Gallōrum*, a *genitive*. G. 284, I., II., REM.; 326, I., II.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified ; **Tito** *filiam* in *mātrīmōnium* *dāt* is the predicate, and is made up of the verb *dāt* and its modifiers, viz : **Tito**, an indirect object ; *filiam*, a direct object ; and in *mātrīmōnium*, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dō, dārē,	give.
ēnunciō, ēnunciārē,	report.
mātrīmōnium, i, n.	marriage.
in mātrīmōnium dārē,	to give in marriage.

Pronounce; translate; analyze; ¹ conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² consilia Belgārum³ ēnunciābīt. 2. Rōmānis⁴ consilia Belgārum ēnunciābīt. 3. Tītus *filiam* in⁵ mātrīmōnium dābīt.⁶ 4. Lēgātō *filiam* in mātrīmōnium dābīt. 5. Lēgātis *filias* in mātrīmōnium dāmūs. 6. Helvētii multa lōca in Aquitānia occūpant. 7. Cassius concilium Rōmānōrum convōcāt. 8. Deos⁷ et deas⁸ in templa convōcāt. 9. Rōmāni oppīda multa et magna⁹ expugnābant. 10. Amicitiam cūm Helvētiis confirmant. 11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppīdum ullo¹⁰ sinē pēricūlo occūpābītīs. 12. Galli agros multos et pulchros⁹ in Aquitānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius**? (17 and 18)

³ See 40.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in **dō** the characteristic *a* is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See 20.

⁸ See 11.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

¹⁰ See 24.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND
FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *ămă*. A. & G. 118 ; 128 : A. & S. 210 ; 213 (2) ; 222 ; 224 (5) : B. 75 : B. & M. 282 : G. 120 : H. 205 ; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF. ; 247, 1, 2 : C. p. 102 ; pp. 76, 77.

42. *Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.* A. & G. 280 ; 281 : A. & S. 462 (2), (3) : B. 57 : B. & M. 1096 ; 1098 : G. 233 ; 236 : H. 472 ; 473 : C. 194 ; 195.

43. *What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ?* A. & G. 115, c ; 279 : A. & S. 462 (1) : B. 60 : B. & M. 1092 ; 1093 : G. 226 ; 227 ; 231 : H. 471, I., II. : C. 66, 4.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of *ămă*. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. *The Perfect Stem* is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending *i* : e. g. Perfect Indicative *vastāvī*, Perfect Stem *vastāv*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>confirmă</i> ,	<i>confirmăre</i> ,	<i>confirmăvī</i> , ¹	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>convăcă</i> ,	<i>convăcăre</i> ,	<i>convăcăvī</i> ,	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>dă</i> ,	<i>dăre</i> ,	<i>dădī</i> , ⁴	<i>give.</i>
<i>expugnă</i> ,	<i>expugnăre</i> ,	<i>expugnăvī</i> ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
<i>hiemă</i> ,	<i>hiemăre</i> ,	<i>hiemăvī</i> ,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
<i>occăpă</i> ,	<i>occăpăre</i> ,	<i>occăpăvī</i> ,	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>Rămă</i> , ae, f.			<i>Rome.</i>
<i>săpăre</i> ,	<i>săpăre</i> ,	<i>săpăvī</i> ,	<i>overcome, subdue.</i>
<i>vastă</i> ,	<i>vastăre</i> ,	<i>vastăvī</i> ,	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
<i>vexă</i> ,	<i>vexăre</i> ,	<i>vexăvī</i> ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvit.² 2. Concilium Gallōrum convōcāvēř.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppidum occūpāvērant. 4. Helvētīi castra occūpāvērint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vastāvērunt.² 6. Amīcītiā cūm Rōmānis confirmāvēřit. 7. Cōpiāe circūm Rōmam hiēmāvēřē.² 8. Cassius Tīto filiā in mātřimōnium dēdit.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētios vexāvērunt.² 10. Sēquāni Germānos sūpērāvērunt.² 11. Circūm Rōmam hiēmāvērant. 12. Oppidum Aquilēiā occūpāvi.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular* of each tense: e. g. the synopsis of **vastāvit** is *vastō, vastābām, vastābō, vastāvi, vastāvēřām, vastāvēřō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: **Cassius vastāvit**, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time? (42) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time? (26) The Imperfect Tense? (36) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. *loved had they* has the Perfect Stem **āmāv**, *loved*; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **ēra**, *had*; the Personal Ending **nt**, *they*.

⁴ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6; observe that the *Perfect stem* of **dō** is **dēd**, not **dāv**.

LESSON XV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of *āmd* and its meanings. A. & G. 128; 118, for *personal endings*: A. & S. 213 (3); 222: B. 74, a; 64, b, for *pers. endings*: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 3, for *pers. endings*: C. p. 77; p. 104 for *pers. endings*.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 269: A. & S. 527: B. 312, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. 1110: G. 259: H. 487: C. 247, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

āvūs, ī, m.

Divitiācūs, ī, m.

jūvō, jūvārē, jūvī,

mātūrō, mātūrārē, mātūrāvī,

nātūrā, ae, f.

nunciō, nunciārē, nunciāvī,

proeliūm, ī, n.

sōcēr, sōcērī, m.

vītō, vītārē, vītāvī,

vōcō, vōcārē, vōcāvī,

grandfather.

Divitiacus.

help, aid.

make haste, hasten.

nature.

announce.

battle.

father-in-law.

avoid, shun.

call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. Jūvā,¹ mātūrā, nunciā. 2. Jūvātō, mātūrātō, nunciātō.
3. Jūvātē, mātūrātē, nunciātē. 4. Vītā, Divitiācē,² proeliūm.
5. Vītā, O āvē,³ pēricūlūm. 6. Dātē, vīrī, Rōmānīs⁴ armā.⁵
7. Vōcā, sōcēr, puērōs. 8. Mātūrā, Cassī,⁶ Tītō⁴ nunciārē.
9. Mātūrātē, vīrī, oppīdūm expugnārē. 10. Vastātē agrōs.
11. Vastātē multōs agrōs. 12. Vastātē tōtām prōvinciām.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger.
4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius.
6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius.
8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² See LN. V., NOTE 5.

³ O *āvē*, O grandfather, or my grandfather.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See LN. VIII., VY.

⁶ See 18.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?



LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of *āmō*. A. & G. 118; 128, page 93; 289: A. & S. 214; 222, page 108: B. 51; 53, *a-d*; 65; 66; 72; 74, *a*; 75: B. & M. 264, IV.; 265; 282: G. 110; 119; 120: H. 200, I.-IV.; 205; 248, ACTIVE: C. p. 104; pp. 77, 78.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 122, *b*: A. & S. 220, NOTE: B. 73: B. & M. 275: G. 118: H. 202; 203; 220, CONJ. I.: C. 69.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in *ūm* by dropping the *ūm*: e. g. *cūrātūm* is a Supine in *ūm* and *cūrāt* its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (28), the Perfect (45), and the Supine (50). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

<i>āmō</i> ,	<i>ārē</i> ,	<i>āvī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>love.</i>
<i>cūrō</i> ,	<i>ārē</i> ,	<i>āvī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>care for.</i>
<i>dō</i> ,	<i>dārē</i> , ³	<i>dēdī</i> ,	<i>dātūm</i> , ³	<i>give.</i>
<i>jūvō</i> ,	<i>jūvārē</i> ,	<i>jūvī</i> ,	<i>jūtūm</i> ,	<i>help, aid.</i>

nēgō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	deny.
pugnō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	fight.
vastō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	lay waste, devastate.
vexō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	disturb, harass.
vocō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	call.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (49) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *āmō*. To form the Principal Parts let *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* take the place of final *ō* in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. *cūrō*, *cūrārē*, *cūrāvī*, *cūrātūm*.

³ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of *dō*, *cūrō*, *jūvō*, and *vastō*. What is the Ending of each Infinitive? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed? What is the Ending of each Participle? What is the Future Active Participle of *dō*, *nēgō*, *pugnō*? What is the Present Participle of each? On which Stem is the Gerund formed? Form and decline the Gerund of *dō* and *cūrō*. What are the Endings of the Supine?

LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272: A. & S. 533 (1): B. 315, f: B. & M. 1148: G. 527: H. 534: C. 237.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f: A. & S. 530: B. 225, RULE XVI.: B. & M. 1136: G. 526, second part: H. 536: C. 109, 3.

EXAMPLES.

- 1.** *Dicīt Rōmānōs¹ oppidūm² expugnārē,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.*
- 2.** *Dicīt Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnāvissē, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.*

3. **Dīcīt Rōmānōs oppīdūm expugnātūrōs⁵ essē**, *he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppīdūm expugnārē** is the Direct Object of **dīcīt** (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārē** is translated by the Indicative *are storming*; the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs**, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans*; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, ōrūm, m.				<i>the Aedui.</i>
Ariovistūs, ī, m.				<i>Ariovistus.</i>
dēmonstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,¹				<i>show, declare.</i>
dīcīt,				<i>he says.</i>
existīmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,				<i>think, suppose.</i>
nēgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,				<i>deny.</i>
nunciō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,				<i>announce.</i>
pūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,				<i>think.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. **Dīcīt² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārē.³** 2. **Pūtāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexāvissē.** 3. **Nunciāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essē.** 4. **Existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpātūrūm essē.** 5. **Tītūs existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpāvissē.** 6. **Ariovistūs nunciāt Germānōs agrūm Helvētiūm vastātūrōs essē.** 7. **Dīcīt Rōmānōs frūmentūm importārē.** 8. **Existīmāt Helvētiōs frūmentūm importātūrōs essē.** 9. **Dīcīt Gallōs frūmentūm Rōmānīs⁴ dātūrōs essē.** 10. **Dīcīt Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armā dātūrōs essē**

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this VY. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — **vexārē** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *vexō, vexārē, vexāvī, vexātū*; Stems, **VEXA** (28), **VEXĀV** (45), **VEXĀT** (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vexārē, vexāvissē, vexātūrūs essē*; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject **Rōmānōs** is the Object of **dicīt**; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248, c 1: A. & S. 407: B. 258, RULE XLIII.: B. & M. 873: G. 403: H. 420: C. 166.

VOCABULARY.

anīmūs, ī, m.	<i>mind.</i>
concīliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>win, conciliate.</i>
confirmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>establish, encourage.</i>
intēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>between, among.</i>
Nōrēiā, ae, f.	<i>Noreia.</i>
oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>attack, besiege, assault.</i>
proptēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>on account of.</i>
Trēvīrī, ōrum, m.	<i>the Treviri.</i>
verbūm, ī, n.	<i>word.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Intēr² Sēquānos ēt Helvētios. 2. Proptēr² angustias.
3. Nōrēiam oppugnāmūs.³ 4. Nōrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rō-
māni Nōrēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēvīri Nōrēiam oppug-
nābunt. 7. Dīcīt Trēvīros⁵ Nōrēiam oppugnātūros⁶ essē.⁷
8. Nōrēiam oppugnātīs. 9. Nōrēiam oppugnātē.⁸ 10. Di-
vitiācus Gallōrum anīmos verbis⁹ confirmāvīt. 11. Divitiācus
Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmābīt. 12. Tītus pūtāt Diviti-
ācum Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmātūrūm essē. 13. Cassius
regnum conciliāvīt. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis conciliābāt.
15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiāco¹⁰ conciliābīt. 16. Nēgāt
Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiāco conciliātūrūm essē. 17. Tītus
Divitiāco¹⁰ filiam in mātřimōnium¹¹ dēdīt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppugnāmūs** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *oppugnō, oppugnārē, oppugnāvī, oppugnātūm*; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is **ā**; Stems, **OPPUGNA, OPPUGNĀV, OPPUGNĀT**; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnō, oppugnābām, oppugnābō, oppugnāvī, oppugnāvērām, oppugnāvēro*; conjugated, *oppugnō, oppugnās, oppugnāt, oppugnāmūs, oppugnātīs, oppugnant*; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (**nos, we**) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present Indicative?

⁹ **verbis**, with words, or by means of words; it is a modifier (38) of **confirmāvīt**.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *a, b*: B. 36; 121: B. & M. 44-47: G. 16; 25; 26: H. 46-47, *including fine print*.

56. A. & G. 48, *a-d*; 49, *w. declension of consŭl, nŏmĕn, hŏnŏr, leo, frātĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs*: A. & S. 103, *a-f*; 104, *decl. of consul, leo, virgo, nomen, pater*; 107, *honor*: B. 130; 135, *w. declension of consŭl, virgŏ, leŏ, nŏmĕn, ħmŏr, pătĕr*: B. & M. 73-77; 90-97, *including the Paradigms*: G. 36-39; 40; 42; 43; 44-46; 47: H. 55; 56; 57, *Case-Suffixes*; 60, *Paradigms, 1, 3, 4*: C. 26, *declension of rĕx, nŏmĕn, leo, pătĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs*.

VOCABULARY.

accŭso, ħre, ħvi, ħtum,	<i>accuse, censure.</i>
Caesār, Caesārĭs, m.	<i>Caesar.</i>
consŭl, consŭlĭs, m.	<i>consul.</i>
citrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>this side of.</i>
flŭmĕn, flŭmĭnĭs, n.	<i>river.</i>
frātĕr, frātĕrĭs, m.	<i>brother.</i>
hŏnŏr, hŏnŏrĭs, m.	<i>honor.</i>
mătĕr, mătĕrĭs, f.	<i>mother.</i>
pătĕr, pătĕrĭs, m.	<i>father.</i>
Sĕquānā, ae, m.	<i>the Seine.</i>
sŏrŏr, sŏrŏrĭs, f.	<i>sister.</i>
uxŏr, uxŏrĭs, f.	<i>wife.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. A¹ flŭmĭnĕ Rhŏdāno.² 2. E¹ flŭmĭnĕ Rhŏdāno. 3. Ad flŭmĕn Sĕquānam. 4. Citrā flŭmĕn Rhĕnum. 5. Pătĕr sŏrŏrĕm in mătĕrĭmŏnĭum dat. 6. Mătĕr sŏrŏrĕm in mătĕrĭmŏnĭum dābit. 7. Caesār sŏrŏrĕm in mătĕrĭmŏnĭum dĕdit. 8. Tĭtus dĭcĭt Caesārĕm sŏrŏrĕm in mătĕrĭmŏnĭum dĕdisse. 9. Caesār uxŏrĕm accŭsāvit. 10. Caesār consŭl² Tĭtum lĕgātum² accŭsāvērat. 11. Nĕgat Caesārĕm consŭlĕm Tĭtum

lēgātum accūsāvisse. 12. Caesārīs³ uxōrēm accūsābimus.
13. Pātrēm et mātrem et frātrēm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone. 2. This side of the river Seine.
3. Across the river Rhine. 4. Caesar gives a sister in marriage.
5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage.
6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage.
7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul. 8. Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

³ See LN. III., NOTES 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of *flūminis* differ in form from the Nominative Singular?



LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. 21; 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*; 44; 45, *a-c*; 46: A. & S. 55; 101, *a, c*; 102; 104, decl. of *caput*: B. 130-134, including the Paradigms: B. & M. all of 86-88: G. 37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; all of 56-59: C. Remainder of 26; 27.

VOCABULARY.

atque ¹ or ac, ¹ conj.		and.
căpūt,	căpītīs, n.	head.
custōs,	custōdīs, m.	guard.
Dumnōrix,	Dumnōrīgīs, m.	Dumnorix.
Jūra, ae, m.		the Jura.
mīlēs,	mīlītīs, m.	soldier.
mons,	montīs, m.	mountain.

pars,	partīs, f.	<i>part.</i>
princeps,	princīpīs, m.	<i>chief.</i>
rādex,	rādicīs, f.	<i>root.</i>
rex,	rēgīs, m.	<i>king.</i>
urbs,	urbīs, f.	<i>city.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgēm Germānōrum. 2. Ad princīpēm Galliae prōvinciae. 3. Ad montēm² Jūram. 4. Sūb³ montē Jūrā. 5. Intēr montēm Jūram et flūmēn Rhōdānum. 6. Cīrcūm urbēm² Rōmam.⁴ 7. In urbē Rōmā. 8. Proptēr hōnōrēs Caesārīs. 9. In partēs Galliae. 10. Cūm Dumnōrigē fratrē Divitiāci. 11. Rex atquē āmicus. 12. Sīnē rēgē atquē sīnē āmicis. 13. Cāpītā mīlītūm. 14. Ad rādicēs montīs. 15. Cum princīpē tōtīus Galliae. 16. Urbēs multae et mag-nae.⁵

Notes.

¹ *atquē* is used before vowels and consonants; *ac*, only before consonants.

² A. & G. 47 *a*, page 27: A. & S. 109, *a*: B. 137, *a*, 1: B. & M. 116; 119: G. 54, REMARK: H. 64, *urbs*: C. p. 26, *dens*.

³ See *sūb*, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

⁵ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. 239, 1: A. & S. 394 (1): B. 216, RULE VIII.: B. & M. 715: G. 334: H. 373: C. 126.

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesārēm consūlēm creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppīdum appellant Gēnāvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
cīvītās, cīvītātis, f.	<i>state.</i>
creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>elect, appoint.</i>
lēgātio, lēgātiōnis, f.	<i>embassy.</i>
lex, lēgis, f.	<i>law.</i>
mors, mortis, f.	<i>death.</i>
pax, pācis, f.	<i>peace.</i>
post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after.</i>
proximūs, ā, ūm,	<i>nearest.</i>
Pŷrēnaeus, ā, ūm,	<i>Pyrenean.</i>
sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.	<i>senator.</i>
suūs, ā, ūm,	<i>his, their.</i>
virtūs, virtūtis, f.	<i>valor, virtue.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Pōpūlus Caesārēm² consūlē² creāvīt. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpūlus creāvit. 3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpūlum³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Pōpūlus Rōmānus sēnātōrēs patrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam⁵ urbēm Rōmam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnōrix, frātēr⁶ Divitiāci,⁷ regnum in suā⁵ cīvītātē occūpāvit. 7. Helvētii cūm proximis cīvītātībūs pācēm et āmicītiā confirmant. 8. Caesār oppīdum virtūtē⁸ suōrum milītūm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppīdo Gēnāvā⁶ pons¹¹ ad Helvētios pertīnet (*extends*). 10. Aquītāniā ā Garumnā⁹ flūmīnē ad Pŷrēnaeos⁹ montes pertīnet. 11. Lēgātiōnis principēm Dumnōrigēm creāvērunt. 12. Belgae et Galli linguā¹⁰ et lēgībūs¹⁰ diffērunt (*differ*). 13. Post mortēm Caesāris.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.⁸

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See 58 and Examples.³ See 53.⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When *suūs* refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to *Rōmāni*, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to *Dumnōrix*, render it *his, her, or its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See 25.⁷ See 40.⁸ See 54.⁹ See General Vocabulary.¹⁰ See LN. I., NOTE 5.¹¹ *pons, pontis, m. bridge.*

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. *Review* 44; 45; 46; 47; 48; 49, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. 105; 106, a, b, d, e; 107, and the decl. already learned: B. 136: B. & M. all the Paradigms under 88-97, III.: G. 48-50: H. all of 61: C. 26 to I. — nouns.

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, a-c: A. & S. 118: B. 140: B. & M. 152; 159; 168: G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111: C. 30.

VOCABULARY.

<i>corpūs,</i>	<i>corpōrīs,</i> n.	<i>body.</i>
<i>crūs,</i>	<i>crūrīs,</i> n.	<i>leg.</i>
<i>flōs,</i>	<i>flōrīs,</i> m.	<i>flower.</i>
<i>frīgus,</i>	<i>frīgōrīs,</i> n.	<i>cold, frost.</i>
<i>fūnūs,</i>	<i>fūnērīs,</i> n.	<i>funeral procession.</i>
<i>gēnūs,</i>	<i>gēnērīs,</i> n.	<i>kind.</i>
<i>jūs,</i>	<i>jūrīs,</i> n.	<i>right, law.</i>
<i>mōs,</i>	<i>mōrīs,</i> m.	<i>custom, manner.</i>
<i>ōnūs,</i>	<i>ōnērīs,</i> n.	<i>load, burden.</i>
<i>ōpūs,</i>	<i>ōpērīs,</i> n.	<i>work.</i>
<i>scēlūs,</i>	<i>scēlērīs,</i> n.	<i>crime, guilt.</i>
<i>tempūs,</i>	<i>tempōrīs,</i> n.	<i>time.</i>
<i>vulnūs,</i>	<i>vulnērīs,</i> n.	<i>wound.</i>

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Jūs² belli; jūră pöpŭli Rōmāni. 2. Gēnŭs proeli;³ multa gēnēră fŭnērŭm. 3. Tempörē⁴ pătrŭm; tempöră ęt mōrēs. 4. Vulnēră mīlītŭm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.⁵ 6. Prop-ter frīgöră. 7. In⁶ rēlīquum tempŭs. 8. Mōrē ęt exemplō pöpŭli Rōmāni. 9. Mīlītēs multă vulnēră accēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scēlēră virōrum sunt (*are*) multa. 11. Crŭră ęqui sunt magna. 12. Corpŭs vīri est (*is*) parvum. 13. Gēnēră flōrŭm sunt multa. 14. Nullum⁷ önŭs aliud. 15. Nulla önēră alia. 16. Onēră multa et magna. 17. Facta⁹ măla⁸ scēlēră⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rex jūră et mōrēs vīris¹⁰ dăbăt.¹¹ 19. Multa gēnēră frŭmenti importăbīmus. 20. Dīcit Rōmānos multa gēnēră frŭmenti importăre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

³ See 17.

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ How does *flōrēs pulchri* differ from *pulchri flōrēs*? (LN. VI., NOTE 2.)

⁶ *in, for.*

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in *iŭs* and Dative in *i*. (24)

⁸ *măla* modifies *facta*.

⁹ See 58.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. 51, c; 52; 53, a-c; 54; 55, a-e; A. & S. 108, a, b; 109, a; B. 130; 137, a, b, 1-2, REMARK: B. & M. all of 98, I., and 99, II.; 100: G. 58-61: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64, 1; 65, 1-3: C. I. — *nouns*, pp. 25-27.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrögēs, Allobrögŭm, m.	<i>the Allobroges.</i>
ănimăl, ănimălis, n.	<i>animal.</i>
collis, collis, m.	<i>hill.</i>
crēmō, ārē, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>burn.</i>
fīnis, fīnis, m.	<i>limit; pl. territory.</i>
hostis, hostis, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
✕ignis, ignis, m.	<i>fire.</i>
✕mărē, mărīs, n.	<i>sea.</i>
năvis, năvis, f.	<i>ship.</i>
nŭbēs, nŭbis, f.	<i>cloud.</i>
quē, ¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
rŭpēs, rŭpis, f.	<i>rock, cliff.</i>
terră, ae, f.	<i>earth, land.</i>
✕turris, turrīs, f.	<i>tower.</i>

¹ quē is appended to the second of the connected words: e. g. rŭpēs turrisquē, *cliff and tower*. Words thus appended are called enclitics.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In năvībŭs. 2. In¹ collē et in montē. 3. In hostiŭm nŭmērō. 4. Gēnēră ănimăliŭm multa sunt. 5. Terră mărīquē.² 6. Vīros ignī³ crēmant. 7. Allobrögēs vīrum ignī crēmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrögēs⁴ vīrum ignī crēmāre. 9. In turrībŭs et in¹ rŭpībŭs. 10. In nŭbībŭs. 11. Intēr fīnēs Helvėtiōrum et Allobrögŭm⁵ Rhōdănus fluit (*flows*). 12. Helvētii pēr angustias et fīnēs Sēquănōrum suas⁶ cōpias trāduxērāt (*had led across*). 13. Mons Jūra fīnēs Sēquănōrum āb Helvētiis dīvidit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On¹ the cliffs. 2. Out of the ships. 3. Through the territory of the Aedui. 4. Into the territory of the Sequani. 5. On the hills and mountains. 6. In the number of animals. 7. Men will burn the tower with fire.³ 8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire. 9. Many kinds of towers. 10. The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in, on.² A. & G. 156, a: A. & S. 562 (2): B. 330, a: G. 477; 478; 479: H. 554, l., 2: C. 183, 2.³ See 54.⁴ See 53.⁵ What does *Allobrogum* modify?⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer?⁷ What is the rule of gender for *mārē, rūpēs, milēs, nāvis, tempūs, hōnōr, civitās, lēgatio*? (60). See H. 100, 3, for *lēgatio*.

LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of *sum*. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 215: B. 71: B. & M. 277: G. 112: H. 204: C. 70.

63. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 239: B. & M. 410: H. 289. What are the Stems of *sūm*? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of *sum*? Where are the following forms made: *ērām, est, fuērunt, sīmūs, ērunt, fuērant, estō, fuissēm, fuērō*?



LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, a, b; 183; 185; 186, b: A. & S. 327-329; 334: B. 206, RULE II.: B. & M. 666: G. 202: H. 362; 438, 2: C. 111.

VOCABULARY.

<i>Ārār, Ārāris</i> , acc. <i>Ārārīm</i> , m.	<i>the Sabine</i> , pronounced <i>Sōne</i> .
<i>Divico, ōnis</i> , m.	<i>Divico</i> .
<i>extrēmūs, ā, ūm</i> ,	<i>furthermost</i> .
<i>hōmō,¹ inīs</i> , m. and f.	<i>man</i> .
<i>impērātōr, ōrīs</i> , m.	<i>commander-in-chief, general</i> .

lĕgio, ōnīs, f.	<i>legion.</i>
mūliēr, ĕrīs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
obsēs, idīs, m. and f.	<i>hostage.</i>
pōtestās, ātīs, f.	<i>power.</i>
testīs, īs, m. and f.	<i>witness.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppidum est magnum.² 2. Animāl fuit parvum.
 3. Pūtat suam sōrōrēm essē pulchram.³ 4. Hōmīnēs fuērunt
 aegri. 5. Sēquāni sōli ĕrunt libēri. 6. Cēsār ĕrāt impērātōr.
 7. Mūliēr est bōna. 8. Dīcīt Sēquānos sōlos fūtūros essē
 libēros. 9. Estē,⁴ O puēri, bōni. 10. Ariovistus fuit rex
 Germānōrum. 11. Divīco dux Helvētiōrum fuērāt. 12. Le-
 gātiōnīs Divīco princeps fuit. 13. Extrēmum oppidum Allo-
 brōgum est Gēnēvā. 14. Pōpulus⁵ Rōmānus est testīs.
 15. Erāt in Galliā lĕgio ūnā. 16. Pars cītrā flūmēn Arārīm⁶
 rēliquā est. 17. Flūmēn⁷ est Arār quōd (*which*) pēr fīnēs
 Aeduōrum et Sēquānōrum in Rhōdānum influīt (*flows*).
 18. Mons Jūrā⁸ est inter Sēquānos ēt Helvētios. 19. Prop-
 ter frīgōra frūmenta⁹ in agris mātūra non ĕrant. 20. Aedui
 Sēquānis¹⁰ obsīdēs dēdērunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ **hōmo** means a *human being*, man or woman; **vīr** means *man*, *hero*, never woman.

² **oppidum est magnum** may be rendered *the town is large*; *it is a large town*; or *there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ See 47.

⁵ **pōpulus** takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for **Arār**? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate **frūmenta** as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, a, b: A. & S. 472; 476 (2): B. & M. 1161: G. 247-249: H. 196, II., 1-4: C. 201.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī Liscus sit dux, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader; or, if Liscus BE leader.*
2. *Sī Liscus esset dux, if Liscus WERE leader.*
3. *Sī Liscus fuērit dux, if Liscus SHOULD HAVE BEEN leader; or, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader.*
4. *Sī Liscus fuisset dux, if Liscus HAD BEEN leader.*
5. *Sīmus dūcēs, LET US BE leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f.	desire.
dux, dūcīs, m. and f.	leader, guide.
Liscūs, ī, m.	Liscus.
multītūdō, īnis, f.	multitude.
nōn, adv.	not.
ōrātiō, ōnīs, f.	speech, oration.
sī, conj.	if.
vectīgāl, ālis, n.	tax, revenue.

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. *Sī² Caesar sit³ consul.⁴*
2. *Sī Caesar esset consul.*
3. *Sī Caesar fuērit consul.*
4. *Sī Caesar fuisset consul.*
5. *Sīmus consules.*
6. *Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.*
7. *Sī propter frīgōra frūmentum in agris sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.*
8. *Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna.*
9. *Sī vectīgālia essent parva.*
10. *Sī Divīco princeps lēgatiōnis fuisset.*
11. *Sī nōn⁵ bōnus sis.*
12. *Sī ōrātiōnes Caesāris fuissent multae.*
13. *Sī multītūdō mīlītum sit magna.*
14. *Sī cūpīdītās regnī esset magna.*

15. Sī rex fuisses. 16. Milītes sīmus. 17. Sī mīles essem.
18. Sī sis impērātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthest town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

¹ A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. *sīm, essem, fuērim, fuissem*.

² *sī* is a *conditional conjunction*; the sentence which it introduces is a *conditional sentence*.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ A. & G. 207: A. & S. 74 (5): B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 440, 1, 2: H. 551: C. 255. What does *nōn* modify?



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sūm. A. & G. 137, *a*: A. & S. 215, *d*: B. 109, I., *a*: B. & M. 279; 411: G. 113; 114: H. 289; 290, I., III.: C. 71.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 228: A. & S. 377 (1): B. 242, RULE XXX.: B. & M. 826: G. 346: H. 386: C. 154.

EXAMPLES.

1. Pauci¹ sūperfuērunt, *few survived*.
2. Dux suis milītibus (67) ādērat, *the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers*.

3. **Caesar prōvinciae (67) praefuit**, *Caesar RULED OVER the province.*
 4. **Sī Liscus multis¹ prōdesset**, *if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many.*
 5. **Sī consilium dēfuisset**, *if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING.*
 6. **Tītus lēgiōni (67) praeerat**, *Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion.*

VOCABULARY.

āb-sūm,	āb-essē,	āb-fui,	<i>be away, be absent, be distant.</i>
ād-sūm,	ād-essē,	āf ² -fui,	<i>be present, assist.</i>
dē-sūm,	dē-essē,	dē-fui,	<i>be wanting.</i>
hūmānītās, ātis, f.			<i>refinement, humanity.</i>
longissimē, adv.			<i>very far.</i>
pauci, ¹ ae, a,			<i>few.</i>
prae-sūm,	prae-essē,	prae-fui,	<i>be over, rule over, be in command of.</i>
prō-sūm,	prōd-essē,	prō-fui,	<i>be for, be useful.</i>
sūper-sūm,	sūper-essē;	sūper-fui,	<i>be over, survive.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi¹ sūperfuērunt. 2. Multi³ sūpersūmus. 3. Pauci sūpērērīmus. 4. Caesar suis mīlītībus⁴ ādērīt. 5. Sī Caesar suis mīlītībus nōn adsit.⁵ 6. Consul urbi praeerat. 7. Lābiēnus oppīdo⁶ Gēnāvae⁷ praeerīt. 8. Consul lēgiōni praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsimus.⁸ 11. Nōn deest consilium. 12. Consūles⁹ dēsūmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānītate prōvinciae¹⁰ longissīme¹¹ absunt. 14. Sī deus¹² adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive. 2. Few³ (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let⁸ us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were¹³ in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls⁹ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

² Observe that in **ad-sum** the **d** of **ad** becomes **f** before **f**.

² **multi** modifies **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **sūpersumus**; render, *many of us survive*.

⁴ See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁵ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁹ **consūles** is an appositive to **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **dēsūmus**.

¹⁰ See 40.

¹¹ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹² See 20.

¹³ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.

LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possūm. A. & G. 137, *b*: A. & S. 216: B. 109, I., *b*: B. & M. 412: G. 115: H. 290, II., *including fine print*: C. 72.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271: A. & S. 532: B. 315, *c*: B. & M. 1138: G. 424: H. 533: C. 241.

possum - posse potui

EXAMPLES.

1. **Milites pugnāre**, (69) **possunt**, *the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight; or the soldiers CAN fight.*
2. **Milites pugnāre pōtērant**, *the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight; or the soldiers COULD fight.*
3. **Milites pugnāre pōtērunt**, *the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.*
4. **Milites pugnāre pōtuērunt**, *the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight; or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.*
5. **Sī milites pugnāre possint**, *if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight.*
6. **Sī milites pugnāre possent**, *if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.*

7. **Si milites pugnare pōtuissent**, *if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.*
 8. **Dīcit milites (53) pugnare (69) potuissē (52)**, *he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of **POSSŪM**; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Consul oppidum expugnare pōtest.³ 2. Consul oppidum expugnare pōtērāt. 3. Consul oppidum expugnare pōtērīt. 4. Consul oppidum expugnare pōtuīt. 5. Dicit consulem⁴ oppidum expugnare pōtuissē.⁵ 6. Si consul oppidum expugnare possīt. 7. Si consul oppidum expugnare possēt. 8. Si consul oppidum expugnare pōtuissēt. 9. Pōpulus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ consulem⁶ creāre non pōtērīt. 10. Tīto⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātřimōnium dāre non possūm. 11. Consūli⁸ adessē pōtērīs. 12. Milites agros hostium vastāre pōtērunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessē possūmūs. 14. Nēmo (*no one*) sīne virtūte bonus essē pōtest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of **possūm** is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form **possūm**? Which part of **pōtis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁵ See 52.

⁶ See 58.

⁷ See 39.

⁸ See 67.



LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of amō. A. & G. 118, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128:

A. & S. 213 (1); 222; 224, 4, b; B. 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 282: G. 119; 120: H. 205; 243; 245: C. p. 104; pp. 76, 77.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī urbem occūpēmus, if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
2. *Sī urbem occūpārēmus, if WE OCCUPIED the city.*
3. *Sī urbem occūpāvērimus, if WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
4. *Sī urbem occūpāvissēmus, if WE HAD OCCUPIED the city.*
5. *Ut¹ urbem occūpēmus, that WE MAY OCCUPY the city.*
6. *Ut urbem occūpārēmus, that WE MIGHT OCCUPY the city.*
7. *Urbem occūpēmus, LET US OCCUPY the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Sēquāni Helvētios jūvent.*²
2. *Sī Rōmāni Germānos jūvārent.*
3. *Sī rex Helvētios jūvērit.*
4. *Sī Aquītāni Sēquānos jūvissent.*
5. *Ut¹ consul Helvētios jūvet.*
6. *Ut pāter suos filios jūvāret.*
7. *Allobrōges jūvēmus.*
8. *Pueros vōcēmus.*
9. *Concīlium Gallōrum convōcēmus.*
10. *Sī Caesāri³ fīliam suam in mātrīmōnium det.*
11. *Sī cum proximis civitātibus⁴ pācem et āmicītiā confirmes.*
12. *Ut milītes circum Rōmam hiēmārent.*
13. *Ut pōpūlus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret.*
14. *Ut consul oppīdum Gēnāvam⁶ occūpāret.*
15. *Ut milītes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent.*
16. *Ut suis cōpiis⁷ regna concīliāret.*

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ut* in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that*.

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *jūvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 58.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ *suis cōpiis, with his troops.* See 54.

LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *āmō*.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, REM.: A. & S. 394 (2): B. 217, RULE IX.: B. & M. 734: G. 333: H. 374: C. 127.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. *Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgītāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. *Rex pōpūlum sermōnem cēlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cēlō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>conceal.</i>
<i>commeō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>go back and forth.</i>
<i>expectō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>await, expect.</i>
<i>flāgītō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>demand.</i>
<i>grāvītēr,</i>	adv.			<i>severely.</i>
<i>mercātōr,</i>	<i>ōris,</i>			<i>trader, merchant.</i>
<i>mīnimē,</i>	adv.			<i>least, by no means.</i>
<i>rōgō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>ask.</i>

saepē, adv.

often.

sententiā, ae, f.

opinion.

sermo, ōnis, m.

discourse, conversation.

vulnērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,

wound.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Lābiēnus suos² milītes³ exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātores exspectāvere.⁵ 3. Tītus nūciat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Milītes Sēquānos grāvīter vulnērāvērunt. 5. Caesar princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāt. 6. Dicit Caesārem princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad⁷ Belgas commeant.⁷ 8. Mercātōres ād Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mīnime⁸ ād Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōres, ād Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgītābit. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgītāt. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgītēt. 14. Caesar consūlem sententiam rōgābit. 15. Dicit Caesārem consūlem sententiam rōgātūrum essē. 16. Tītum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgītēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ ad — commeant, go-back-and-forth to, may be rendered visit.⁸ mīnime modifies saepe.⁹ See 47.¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO**.**72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.**

A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 193; 213 (1): B. 44; 64, a, PASSIVE: B. & M. 262, 2; 333, PASSIVE VOICE: G. 205; 111: H. 195, II.; 247, PERSON, PASS., MEANING: C. 64; p. 103.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **ămă**. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 74, b: B. & M. 283: G. 121: H. 206: C. p. 78.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: e. g. **ămă-mūs**, *we love*; **ămă-mūr**, *we ARE loved*; **ămăbī-tīs**, *you will love*; **ămăbī-mīnī**, *you will BE loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bī**, and in the Passive, **bē**: e. g. **ămă-bī-s**, *you will love*; **ămă-bē-rīs** or **rē**, *you will BE loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
Castīcūs, ī, m.	<i>Casticus.</i>
noșter, nostrā, nostrūm,	<i>our.</i>
occultō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>hide, conceal.</i>

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

1. Oppīda expugnābuntūr.
2. Nostri agri vastābuntūr.
3. Hōmo igni² crēmābītūr.
4. Concīlium Gallōrum convōcābātūr.
5. Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellantūr.
6. Ariovistus rex⁴ atque amīcus appellābātūr.
7. Lucius Cassius consul⁵ amīcus⁴ appellābītūr.
8. Rex⁴ appellābērīs.
9. Divitiācus frāter⁵ Dumnōrigis amīcus⁴ pōpūli Rōmāni appellābātūr.
10. Pāter Castīci pōpūli Rōmāni amīcus appellābātūr.
11. In tantā multītūdīne fūga occultātūr.
12. Orātiōne⁶ Lisci Dumnōrix Divitiāci frāter dēsīgnātūr.
13. Dumnōrix ab Aeduis⁶ accūsābātūr.
14. A Caesāre⁶ accūsābīmīnī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 4, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with a, ab*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, a milite sūpērātūr*; *he is overcome BY the soldier's WEAPONS, telis militis sūpērātūr*.



LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of *āmō*. A. & G. 118; 129: A. & S. 211; 214; 223: B. 76: B. & M. 281, 6, 4; 283: G. 122: H. 206: C. p. 79.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.

citadel.

comportō, arē, avī, atūm,

collect.

ēnunciō, arē, avī, atūm,

divulge, report.

ēquēs, itis, m.

horseman, cavalryman.

praetor, oris, m.

praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis² comportātum³ est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportatā ērat. 3. Obsīdes Helvētiis⁴ dāti³ ērant. 4. Multi obsīdes Helvētiis ā Sēquānis dāti ērant. 5. Nullae⁵ arces expugnatae³ sunt. 6. Nostra consilia hostibus⁴ ēnunciata³ sunt. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus ab Aeduis ēnunciata ērant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor⁶ creatus³ est. 9. Praetores⁶ creati ērimus. 10. Nostri agri vastati sunt. 11. Nostra oppida expugnata sunt. 12. Tantā multitudo ēquitum sup̄rāta³ est. 13. In tantā multitudine ēquitum nostra fuga occultata est. 14. Cōpiae Caesāris ab Germānis ūno proelio⁷ sup̄ratae sunt. 15. Equites ā Caesāre grāviter⁸ accūsati sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number, and case*.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See 24.

⁶ See 64. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ ūno proelio, *in a single battle*. See 54.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of *ămă*. A. & G. 116, b; 118; 129: A. & S. 223, page 114: B. 64, b; 65; 66; 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206: C. pp. 79, 80.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. *Accūsārē, accūsāminī*.¹ 2. *Accūsātōr, accūsantōr*. 3. *Jūvarē, jūvātōr*. 4. *Vōcāminī, vōcantōr*. 5. *Dīcit suum frātre* *creātūm essē*.² 6. *Dīcit frātre* *Divitiāci dēsīgnātūm essē*. 7. *Dīcit montem ā Lābiēno occūpārī*. 8. *Nēgāt*³ *nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essē*. 9. *Nēgāt cūm proxīmis cīvītātīb* *pācem confirmātām essē*. 10. *Dīcit regnum īn cīvītate suā occūpātūm essē*. 11. *Nunciāt Caesārem creātūm essē consūlem*. 12. *Nunciāt Cassium praetōrem creātūm essē*. 13. *Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānis rēgem appellātūm essē*.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used? (47)

² *creātūm essē*, *has been elected*, or *was elected*. See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ *nēgāt*, *he says not*; lit. *he denies*: HE SAYS *our fields have NOT been laid waste*.

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 109, a: A. & S. 206: B. 54; 55: B. & M. 269: H. 200, IV., NOTE: C. 65, 4.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of *ămă*. A. & G. 129 : A. & S. 223 : B. 74, b ; 76 : B. & M. 283 : G. 121 ; 122 : H. 206 : C. pp. 78, 79.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī hōmo crēmētūr*, if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.
2. *Sī hōmo crēmārētūr*, if the man WERE BEING BURNED.
3. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs sīt*, if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED ; or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.
4. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs essēt*, if the man HAD BEEN BURNED ; or if the man WERE BURNED.
5. *Sī sententiam rōgētūr*, if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (*his*) opinion.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Caesar sententiam*¹ *rōgātūs essēt*. 2. *Sī sententiam rōgātūs sīm*. 3. *Sī sententiam rōgārērīs*. 4. *Sī crēmātī essēmūs*. 5. *Sī Ariovistus rex*² *creātūs essēt*. 6. *Sī mīles vulnērētūr*. 7. *Sī non vulnērātūs essēs*. 8. *Sī Ariovistus amīcus pōpūli Rōmāni appellārētūr*. 9. *Sī obsīdes Rōmānis*³ *ā Gallis*⁴ *nōn dentūr*. 10. *Sī obsīdes Germānis āb Helvētiis nōn dātī essent*. 11. *Sī cōpia frūmenti importētūr*. 12. *Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātā essēt*. 13. *Sī Divitiācus ā pōpūlo Rōmāno rex appellātūs essēt*. 14. *Sī rex atque amīcus ā Helvētiis appellārērīs*. 15. *Sī sententiam rōgātī essēmūs*. 16. *Sī sententiam rōgātī sītīs*. 17. *Sī rēges creatī essētīs*. 18. *Sī consules creatī essēmūs*.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.² See 64.³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is *the agent* of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is *the instrument* expressed? What is meant by *the agent*? By *the instrument*?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 195: B. 46: B. & M. 304: G. 211: H. 195, II. 2: C. 79.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 106, *mīror*: A. & S. 223, *mīror*: B. 93, *cōnor*; 55, *second sentence*: B. & M. 306, *second part*; 307; G. 141; 142: H. 231; 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> , ¹	<i>attempt, try.</i>
<i>glōrior</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>glory, boast.</i>
<i>hortor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>exhort, urge.</i>
<i>laetor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>rejoice, exult.</i>
<i>mīror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>admire, wonder at.</i>
<i>mōror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>tarry, delay.</i>
<i>vāgor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>wander about.</i>
<i>pōpūlor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>ravage, lay waste.</i>

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātūs sūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābīmur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus eram, glōriātus ēro. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses. 5. Laetāre, laetāmini, laetēmur.² 6. Dīcit Caesārem laetātum essē. 7. Mirāri³ nōn possūmus. 8. Vāgāri³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vāgāri nōn pōtērīmus. 10. Caesar ād⁴ Rōmam mōrātus est. 11. Helvētii agros Aeduōrum pōpūlābantur. 12. Ut vāgārentur.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can⁶ not rejoice. 7. They could⁶ not rejoice. 8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete Synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus eram, cōnātus ēro; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnāri, cōnātus essē, cōnātūrus essē; *Participles*, cōnans, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerund*, cōnandi; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātu.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ ād with the name of a town may often be rendered *near*, *in the vicinity of*.

⁵ Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

⁶ *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able*, *were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of possūm, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245: A. & S. 404: B. 257, RULE XLII.: B. & M. 873: G. 407: H. 413; 416: C. 166.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180, a-f: A. & S. 311-314, a: B. 288, a-f: B. & M. 1407-1409; 1411: G. 474, 1-4: H. 348; 349: C. 107, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puēri ēquis*¹ (79) *laetantur*, boys rejoice IN HORSES.
2. *Helvētīi suā victōriā*¹ (79) *glōriābantur*, the Helvetii were boasting BECAUSE OF their VICTORY; or the Helvetii were glorying IN their VICTORY.
3. *Orgetōrix Casticum hortātur ūt regnum occūpet*,² Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.
4. *Miles nōn laetētur, sī vulnērētur*,³ the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.
5. *Sī multi vulnērāti essent, nōn laetāti essēmus*, if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.
6. *Ariovistus fuit rex ēt Caesar fuit consul*,⁴ Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. *Impērātor milītibus bōnis laetātur.*
2. *Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur.*
3. *Sēquāni victōriā suā nōn glōriābantur.*
4. *Nēgat*⁵ *Sēquānos victōriā glōriātūros essē.*
5. *Mīlites hortābimur ūt agros pōpūlentur.*
6. *Impērātor milītes suos hortātus est*⁶ *ūt agros Gallōrum pōpūlentur.*
7. *Dumnōrigem hortābor ūt regnum in*⁷ *suā cīvitate occūpet.*
8. *Sī igni*⁸ *crēmer, nōn laetēris.*
9. *Sī Cassius praetor*⁹ *creātus esset, laetātus essem.*
10. *Sī Caesar sermōnem*¹⁰ *milītes*¹⁰ *cēlet, laeter.*
11. *Sī dux milītibus*¹¹ *adesse*¹² *possit, laententur.*
12. *Hortēmur*¹³ *Helvētios ūt cūm proxīmis cīvitatibus pācem*

et amicitiam confirment. 13. Si Caesar multos obsides dedisset hostibus,¹⁴ hostes laetati essent. 14. Puer erat malus et puella erat bona. 15. Consul abest et praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 *equis* and *victoriā* are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, *Orgetorix Casticum hortatur*, and a *subordinate clause*, *ut regnum occūpet*. Observe that *ut occūpet* is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, *miles non laetetur*; *subordinate clause*, *si vulneretur*: *si* and *ut* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ *hortatus est*, *has urged*.

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See 54.

⁹ See 64.

¹⁰ See 71.

¹¹ See 67.

¹² See 69.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁴ See 39.

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, *lēvis*, *ācēr*, *b*, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. 148–150; 152; 155 (1), (2): B. 156; 157, *lēvis*: B. & M. 193, RULES 1, 2; 196, II., *mītis*; 198, *ācēr*: G. 81; 82: H. 152; 153; 154, *tristis*: C. 42; 43.

VOCABULARY.

ālācēr,¹ *crīs*, *crē*,

lively, eager.

brēvīs,² *ē*,

short, brief.

cēlēr,¹ *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*,

swift.

difficilis, ² ě,	<i>difficult, impracticable.</i>
ēquestēr, ¹ trīs, trě,	<i>of cavalry.</i>
fācilis, ² ě,	<i>easy, practicable.</i>
fāmiliā, ae, f.	<i>household, family.</i>
fortis, ² ě,	<i>brave, courageous, strong.</i>
itēr, itīnērīs, n.	<i>journey, route, march.</i>
jūdicium, i, n.	<i>trial.</i>
omnis, ² ě,	<i>all, every.</i>
tristis, ² ě,	<i>sad.</i>

¹ Declined like **ācēr**.

² Declined like **lěvīs, mitīs, fācilīs, tristīs**.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī¹ Galliā. 2. Cūm omnībūs cōpiīs. 3. Pěr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pěr tōtām² urbēm. 5. Equī sunt cělērēs.³ 6. Nėgāt⁴ ěquōs essē cělērēs. 7. Sī ěquītēs fuissent cělērēs, rex laetātūs essēt.⁵ 8. Tempūs est brěvē. 9. Helvētiī oppidā suā omniā incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuīt proeliūm ěquestřē. 11. Dīcīt fūtūrūm essē proeliūm ěquestřē. 12. Sėquānī fuērunt tristes. 13. Itēr¹² ěrāt difficīlē. 14. Sī itēr sīt fācilē, laetēr.⁶ 15. Pūtō itēr essē fācilē. 16. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lėgātūs⁷ suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt⁹ fortēs sint.⁹ 17. Orgėtōrix ād jūdicium omnēm suām fāmiliām coėgīt (*brought*). 18. Orgėtōrix Helvētiōs hortātūs est¹³ ūt¹⁰ dē finībūs suīs cūm omnībūs cōpiīs exīrent.¹⁰ 19. Vīrīs¹¹ fortībūs laetōr.

Notes.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

³ See 64.

⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

¹⁰ ūt—exirent, to go out.

¹¹ See 79.

¹² See A. & G. 60, c: A. & S. 110 (4): B. 138: B. & M. 104: C. 29, 10, exc. 2.

¹³ hortatus est: urged.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 85, *a, b*; 87, *a, c*: A. & S. 154; 155 (3): B. *all of* 158: B. & M. *all of* 193: G. 83; 84; 85, 1-3: H. *all of* 155-158; C. 45.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācis,	<i>bold, audacious.</i>
conditio, ōnis, f.	<i>condition.</i>
contūmēliā, ae, f.	<i>insult.</i>
dīvēs, itīs,	<i>rich.</i>
fēlix, icīs,	<i>happy.</i>
flens, entīs,	<i>weeping.</i>
implōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>beseech, implore.</i>
injūriā, ae, f.	<i>injury.</i>
mūliēr, ēris, f.	<i>woman.</i>
ōriens, entīs,	<i>rising.</i>
pār, pārīs,	<i>equal.</i>
princeps, ipīs,	<i>first, chief.</i>
rēcens, entīs,	<i>recent.</i>
sōl, sōlīs, m.	<i>sun.</i>
spectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>look, front.</i>
vētūs, ēris,	<i>old, ancient.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Vētērēs causae. 2. Vētūs urbs¹ est Rōmā. 3. Mēmōriā vētēris contūmēliae. 4. In pārēm conditiōnēm servitūtis. 5. Rēcentiūm injūriārūm mēmōriā. 6. Mūliērēs ērant fēlicēs. 7. Mūliērēs flentēs Caesārēm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentes pācēm pētiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmūr² milītēs ūt³ ālacrēs et audācēs sint.³ 10. Belgae spectant īn⁴ ōrientēm sōlēm.⁵ 11. Lēgātiōnis principēm⁶ lōcūm⁷ obtīnēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī dīvītēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn pārēs sunt nostrīs milītībūs.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

¹ See 64.² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge*? ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*⁵ See B. 135: B. & M. 121: H. 60: C. 37, 5.⁶ *principēm* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.⁷ How is *lōcūs* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.⁸ *militībūs* is a *Dative*.⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part*.¹⁰ *omnes*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.¹¹ *cannot be, esse nōn possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, *a*: A. & S. 163-166: B. 161; 162; 163, *a*: B. & M. 214-218: G. 86; 88, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1: C. 47; 48.

84. *Declension of Comparatives.* A. & G. 86, *a*: A. & S. 152, *mītiōr*: B. 157, REMARK: B. & M. 197: G. 87: H. 154, NOTE 1: C. 44.

VOCABULARY.

<i>altūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>
<i>fortūnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>fortune.</i>
<i>grāvīs, ē,</i>	<i>heavy, grievous.</i>
<i>lātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>broad, wide.</i>

longē , adv.	<i>by far.</i>
miser , miserā , miserū ,	<i>wretched, pitiable.</i>
nobilis , ē,	<i>well-known, noble.</i>
potens , entis ,	<i>powerful.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>than.</i>
utilis , ē,	<i>useful.</i>

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūrā est mons¹ altissimū.² 2. Caesar dicit Jūrā esse montem altissimū. 3. Rhēnus est flūmen lātissimū et altissimū. 4. Hōmīnī³ nobilissimō ac⁶ potentissimō adērām. 5. Omniū⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apud Helvētiōs longē nobilissimū et ditissimū¹⁰ fuit Orgētōrix. 7. Pēr trēs (*three*) potentissimōs pōpulos tōtīus Galliae. 8. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 9. Milītēs hortemur ut fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Si tempus fuisset brevius, nōn laetātus essem. 11. Milītēs fuerunt Caesarī utilissimī. 12. Dicit esse miseriōrem grāviōremquē⁷ fortunām⁸ Sēquānōrū quā⁹ reliquōrū Gallōrū.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūrā**?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissimū**, *a very high mountain*. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ **67**.

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XX., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of **et**, **quē**, and **atquē**? See LN. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on *quē*, last part.

⁸ *fortūnām* is subject of *essē*.

⁹ When *quām* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quām Rōmānōrūm*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *divēs* and *dis*.

LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 89, *b-e*; 90; 91, *a, b*: A. & S. 167-170 (1), (2); 173: B. 163, *b-d*; 164, *a, b*: B. & M. 219-222: G. 88, 2-4; 89, REMARKS 1, 2: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170: C. 49.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, iūm, f.	<i>the Alps.</i>
cītēriōr, cītēriūs,	<i>hither.</i>
extrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>without, beyond.</i>
infēriōr, infēriūs,	<i>lower.</i>
prīmūs, ā, ūm,	<i>first.</i>
Sēgūsianī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Segusiani.</i>
Sēquānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Sequani.</i>
sūpēriōr, sūpēriūs,	<i>higher, upper.</i>
ultēriōr, ultēriūs,	<i>farther.</i>

Translate and parse.

1. Mājōr¹ multītūdo Germānōrum² Rhēnum transībāt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² maxīmus nūmērus. 3. Cum maxīmo milītum² nūmēro. 4. Belgae pertīnent (*extend*) ād infēriōrem partem flūmīnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lōca sūpēriōra occūpant. 6. Lābiēnus summum montem³ occūpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lābiēno⁴ occūpātus est. 8. Nēgat summum montem ā Lābiēno occūpātum essē. 9. Milītes hortābīmur

ut summum montem occūpent. 10. Sī Lābiēnus summum montem occūpet, Caesar sit⁵ fēlicissimus. 11. Iter pēr prōvinciam est facilius.⁶ 12. Ager Sēquānus ērat optimus⁷ tōtius Galliae. 13. Caesar īn Galliam ultēriōrem pēr Alpes contendit (*hastens*). 14. Cītēriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum. 15. Segūsiani sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ *summum montem, the top of the mountain.*

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ *sit, would be.*

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like *facilis*.

⁷ *optimus, sc. āger.*

LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234: A. & S. 388: B. 245, RULE XXXIII.: B. & M. 860: G. 356: H. 391: C. 162, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Belgae sunt proximī Germānis**, *the Belgae are nearest TO THE GERMANS.*
2. **Castrīs idōneūs lōcūs est**, *the place is suitable FOR A CAMP.*
3. **Deō sīmīlis est**, *he is like A GOD.*

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātis, f.	age.
āmīcūs, ā, ūm,	friendly.
commūnis, ē,	common.
idōneūs, ā, ūm,	fit, suitable.
īnīmīcūs, ā, ūm,	unfriendly, hostile.
pātriā, ae, f.	native land, fatherland.
pēricūlōsūs, ā, ūm,	dangerous.
sīmīlis, ē,	like, similar.
sōlūm, ī, n.	ground, soil.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquītānī sunt proximī prōvinciae. 2. Aquītānī sunt prōpiōrēs prōvinciae quā Itāliae. 3. Gēnāvā est oppidūm proximū Helvētiōrū finībūs. 4. Extrēmū oppidūm Allobrogūm est proximūquē Helvētiōrū finībūs Gēnāvā. 5. Castrīs nōn idōneūs omnis lōcūs est. 6. Nēgāt castrīs idōneūm omnēm lōcūm essē. 7. Sī castrīs idōneūs lōcūs sīt, milītēs laetentūr.¹ 8. Nōn ēgō sūm idōneūs armīs. 9. Sī ēgō fuissēm idōneūs armīs, laetātūs essēm. 10. Dumnōrix Helvētiīs ērāt āmīcūs. 11. Dux īnīmīciōr Dumnōrigī fuit quā Caesārī. 12. Mātrī puellā est sīmīlis. 13. Nōn omnis puēr est sīmīlis patrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. 15. Patriae sōlūm omnībūs cārūm est. 16. Pōpūlō Rōmānō pēricūlōsūm est proeliūm. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtīlēs. 18. Impērātōr suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae ūtīlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
 2. Ocelum was the furthestmost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³ 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (80)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 5.

**LESSON XLII.****ADVERBS.**

87. Definition. A. & G. 25, *f*: A. & S. 74 (5): B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 15, IV., 1: H. 303: C. 98.

88. Derivation. A. & G. 148, *a, b*: A. & S. 174, *b*: B. 199, *b, c*: B. & M. 591; 592; 595: G. 90, 1-4: H. 304, I.-IV.: C. 99, 1, 2.

89. Classification. A. & G. 149, *a-g*: B. 175, *a-f*, REMARK: B. & M. 461, 1-6: H. 305, NOTE 2, 1)-4): C. 99, 3.

90. Comparison. A. & G. 92: A. & S. 175: B. 174, *a-c*: B. & M. 462; 463: G. 91: H. 306: C. 52.

91. Syntax. A. & G. 207: A. & S. 557: B. 327, RULE LXXIX.: B. & M. 996: G. 440, 2: H. 551: C. 255.

VOCABULARY.

ācrītēr , adv.	<i>sharply, fiercely.</i>
audactēr , adv.	<i>boldly, courageously.</i>
cēlērītēr , adv.	<i>quickly, immediately.</i>
fācīlē , adv.	<i>easily, readily.</i>
fortītēr , adv.	<i>bravely, valiantly.</i>
grāvītēr , adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
libērē , adv.	<i>freely, unreservedly.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>where.</i>

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortītēr¹ pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī mīlītēs fortiūs pūgnent, impērātōr laetētūr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācriūs pugnābunt quām Galli.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs fācīlē³ sūpērābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātī sunt. 6. Nunciāt Gallōs ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātōs essē. 7. Caesār Dumnōrigēm grāvissīmē accūsāvīt. 8. Caesār cēlērītēr conciliū dīmītīt (*dismisses*). 9. Liscūs dīcīt libēriūs⁴ atquē⁵ audāciūs. 10. Quā⁶ mīnimā altītūdo flūmīnīs ērāt. 11. Jūmentōrūm ēt carrōrūm quām⁷ maxīmūm nūmērūm coēmērē⁸ (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quām fortissīmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs⁹ quām āmicissīmī fuērunt. 14. Sōlūm patriae civī quām cārissīmūm est.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing an adverb.* — **fortītēr** is an adverb of manner (89); derived from the adjective **fortis** (88); compared **fortītēr**, **fortiūs**, **fortissīmē** (90); of the positive degree and modifies **pugnāvērunt** (91).

² What is the construction of **Galli**?

³ A. & G. 148, d: A. & S. 174 c: B. 174, d: B. & M. 596: G. 90, 4: H. 304, I., 3, 1): C. 99, 1, a.

⁴ **libērē** has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ **quām** modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. **quām maxīmūm**, *as large as possible*; **quām fortissīmē**, *as bravely as possible*.

*where the superlative is used
the adjective is as large as possible*

³ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. **coēmere** has four syllables; **coemere** would have only three.

⁹ See 86.



LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 130: A. & S. 222: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 288: G. 123; 124: H. 207: C. 75. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

mōneō, ¹	ērē, uī, itūm,	advise.
hābeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	have.
prōhibeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	restrain, keep from.

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **mōneō**. For the *principal parts* let **ērē, uī, itūm** take the place of final **eō**: e. g. **hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābitūm**.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mōnēbātis, mōnēbītis, mōnuistis. 2. Sī mōneāmūs,² sī mōnērēmūs, sī mōnuissēmūs. 3. Mōnē, mōnētē, mōnentō. 4. Mōnens, mōnītūrūs. 5. Mōnērē, mōnuissē, mōnītūrūs essē. 6. Ut ēquōs hābeāmūs.² 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ēt³ magnās hābeāt. 8. Multā castrā hābēbīmūs. 9. Lēgātūs multōs mīlītēs hābuērīt.⁴ 10. Hābētō, hābētōtē.⁵ 11. Hābens, hābitūrūs. 12. Hābērē, hābuissē, hābitūrūs essē. 13. Sī Helvētiōs itinērē⁶ prōhibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs itinērē prōhibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs itinērē prōhibeāmūs.⁷ 16. Itinērē Helvētiōs prōhibērē⁸ cōnantūr. 17. Itinērē hostēs prōhibēbīmūs. 18. Mīlītēs itinērē hostēs prōhibērē cōnābuntūr. 19. Sī itinērē mīlītēs prōhibuissēmūs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vīrōs mōnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)⁶ *itīnērē* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 413: B. 256, RULE XLI.: B. & M. 916: G. 388: H. 413; 414: C. 177.⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)

LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. *Accusative of Time*. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 423: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 950: G. 337: H. 379: C. 129, 1. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleō, ērē, ēvī,	ētūm,	destroy.
dōceō, ērē, uī,	doctūm,	teach.
✕jūbeō, ērē, jussī,	jussūm,	command, order.
✕māneō, ērē, mansī, mansūm,		stay, remain.

mōveō, ērē, mōvī, mōtūm,	<i>move, remove.</i>
obtīneō, ērē, uī, obtentūm,	<i>hold, obtain.</i>
possessiō, ōnīs, f.	<i>possession.</i>
vīcūs, ī, m.	<i>village.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vīcos dēlēvērant. 2. Aliud¹ īter hābēbant nullum. 3. Quām² plūrīmas cīvītātes hābēbant. 4. Allobrōges trans Rhōdānum vīcos possessiōnesquē³ hābēbant. 5. Puēros⁴ littēras⁴ dōceāmus. 6. Dīcīt mātrem⁵ filias littēras dōcēre. 7. In Galliā ultēriōre multos annos⁶ mănēbīmus. 8. Caesar sēnātōrem hortātur ūt⁷ īn castris multos menses maneat.⁷ 9. Regnum īn Sēquānis multos annos obtīnuērat. 10. Divīco lēgātiōnis lōcum princīpem obtīnēbat. 11. Sī īmpērātor castra mōveat, milītēs fortius⁸ pugnent. 12. Castra⁹ movēre¹⁰ cēlērīus nōn pōtuērunt.¹¹ 13. Itīnērē¹² Helvētios prōhībēre nōn pōtērunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētīi suis fīnībūs Germānos prōhībēbant. 15. Proxīmum¹³ īter īn ultēriōrem Galliā pēr Alpes est. 16. Sēd īn summo jūgo duas (*two*) lēgiōnes,¹⁴ quas (*which*) īn Galliā citēriōre proxīme conscripserat (*he had enlisted*), ēt omnia auxīlia¹⁴ collōcārī¹⁵ jussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*? (24)

² See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

³ See LN. XXIII., VY., NOTE.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is *ut* — *māneat* to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ From what adjective is *fortiter* derived?

⁹ What does *castra* signify in the Singular?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do *pōtuērunt* and *pōtērunt* differ from each other?

¹² See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹³ *proximum*, *shortest*.

¹⁴ *lēgiōnes* and *auxīlia* are subjects of *collōcārī*. (53)

¹⁵ *collōcārī* (*to be stationed*) with its subjects is object of *jussit*. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

n the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.

): A. & S. 223: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 289: G. 125;

3: C. 75.

, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contineō, ēre, uī, contentum,

dītio, ōnis, f.

oceānūs, ī, m.

rāpīnā, ae, f.

servītus, ūtis, f.

tēneō, ēre, uī, tentum,

undīquē, adv.

*hem in, bound.**dominion, power.**ocean.**plundering.**slavery.**hold, keep.**on all sides.*

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars continētur¹ Gārumnā² flūmīne,³ Oceāno, fīnibus Belgārum. 2. Undīquē lōci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii continentur. 3. Summus mons⁵ ā Tīto Lābiēno tēnēbatur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostībus tentum essē. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostībus teneātur, nostri milītēs quām acerrīme⁶ pugnent. 6. Aedui īn servītute atquē īn dītiōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mēmōriā tēnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesāre rāpīnis⁷ prōhibēbatur. 9. Summus mons ā hostībus tēneri nōn pōtest.⁸ 10. Galli tēneri īn servītute nōn pōtērant.⁸ 11. Obsīdes multos annos īn servītute tēnēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos īn servītute tenti essēmus, nōn fēlices fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could⁸ not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice ? (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? Name the three Stems of *contineo*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed ?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *lōci nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mons*, the top of the mountain ; lit., the highest mountain.

⁶ From *acrīter* ; from what adjective is *acrīter* derived ?

⁷ *rāpinis* ; translate by the Singular ; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense ; by *could*, if in a Past Tense ; e. g. *tēnēri pōtēst*, can be held ; *tēnēri pōtērat*, could be held.

⁹ See 93.

LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation.

A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 223, use *monēor* for model : B. 46 ; 55 ; 93 : B. & M. 304 ; 308 : G. 211 ; 143 ; 144 : H. 231, 1-3 ; NOTE under 232 : C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

<i>intueor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>intuītūs sūm</i> , ¹	<i>look at.</i>
<i>nē</i> , adv.	<i>not</i> , used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.
<i>nē</i> , conj.	<i>that not</i> ; after verbs of fearing, <i>that</i> ; used with the Subjunctive.
<i>polliceor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>pollicītūs sūm</i> ,	<i>promise.</i>
<i>vēreor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>vērītūs sūm</i> ,	<i>fear.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frūmentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frūmentū publice pollicīti erant. 3. Vēreor nē Aedui Rōmānis³ frūmentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Nē⁵ frūmentum polliceāmur.⁶ 5. Sī Aedui frūmentum mātūrum pollicīti essent, Caesar fēlix fuisset. 6. Rōmāni nōn hostem verentur sēd angustias itinēris. 7. Nē Divitiāci anīmum offendēret (*he should offend*) vērebatur. 8. Nunciat⁷ Sēquānos terram intuēri. 9. Nēgat⁸ Rōmānos hostem vēritos essē. 10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possūmus. 11. Nē sōlem intueāmur. 12. Vērebāmur nē hostes agros nostros pōpūlārentur. 13. Vērēmur nē hostes agros nostros pōpūlentur. 14. Vērēmīni nē hostes agros vestros pōpūlentur. 15. Rōmānis frūmentum nōn pollicīti sūmus. 16. Rōmāni Helvētiis obsīdes nōn pollicēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they⁹ have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to our enemies.³ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be⁴ dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.² Define a Deponent Verb. (77)

What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a verb of fearing which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: nē Aedui polliceantur, that the Aedui will promise.⁵ nē is here an adverb.⁸ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.⁶ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.⁹ they, eos.⁷ What is the object of nunciat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 126; 127: B. 142; 143, REM. 2: B. & M. 137: G. 67; 68: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1): C. 34.

97. *Declension of dōmūs.* A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 130: B. 143, REM. 8: B. & M. 144: G. 67, 2: H. 119: C. 34, 1.

VOCABULARY.

adventūs, ūs, m.	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
commōveo, ēre, commōvi, commōtum,	<i>move, disturb.</i>
conspectūs, ūs, m.	<i>sight; view.</i>
cornū, ūs, n.	<i>horn; of an army, wing.</i>
dextēr, dextrā, dextrūm,	<i>right.</i>
dōmūs, ūs, f.	<i>house; dōmi, at home.</i>
ēquitātūs, ūs, m.	<i>cavalry.</i>
exercītūs, ūs, m.	<i>army.</i>
impētūs, ūs, m.	<i>attack.</i>
paenē, adv.	<i>almost.</i>
sempēr, adv.	<i>always.</i>
sustīneō, ēre, uī, sustentūm,	<i>sustain, withstand.</i>

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesāris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētii Caesārīs adventū² commōti sunt. 3. In conspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex conspectū. 5. Paenē in conspectū exercītūs nostri⁴ agri vastantur. 6. Cūm ēquitātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Magnum nūmērū ēquitātūs sempēr hābēbat. 8. Equitātūs sustinēbat hostium impētū. 9. Lābiēnus exercītū⁵ Rōmāno prae-fuit. 10. Hostes impētūs mīlītum sustīnēre nōn pōtuerunt. 11. Equitātū omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) qui⁶ impētū hostium sustīneat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commōveāmur. 13. A dextro cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar dōmi fuit. 15. Sēquāni itinērē⁷ exercītum nostrum prōhibēre cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostri* modifies *exercītūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui* — *sustīneat*, *to withstand*.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.



LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. NOTE; 72; 73; 74, *d*: A. & S. 132, *a*; 133 (2), (3): B. 144, NOTE; 145, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. *all of* 146; 147: G. 69, REMARKS 1, 2; 70: H. 120, 1, 2; 122; 123: C. 35.

VOCABULARY.

<i>commeātūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>compārō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>prepare.</i>
<i>diēs, diēī, m.</i>	<i>day.</i>
<i>fidēs, fidēī, f.</i>	<i>faith, pledge, promise.</i>
<i>pernīciēs, pernīciēī, f.</i>	<i>ruin, destruction.</i>
<i>prōfectio, ōnīs, f.</i>	<i>departure.</i>
<i>rēs, rēī, f.</i>	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>spēs, spēī, f.</i>	<i>hope, expectation.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cūm pernīciē¹ exercītūs. 2. Ad suam pernīciēm. 3. Uno diē. 4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*). 5. Sīnē spē. 6. In mēliōrem² spēm. 7. Magnam īn spēm. 8. Magnas spēs habēmus. 9. Rēs Helvētiis³ enunciāta est. 10. Pūtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essē. 11. Omnes rēs ād prōfectiōnem compārātae sunt. 12. Caesar paucos diēs⁴ ād⁵ Vē-sontiōnem commeātūs causā⁶ mōrātur. 13. Caesar Gallis

fīdēm dābit. 14. Věreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fīdēm det.⁷
 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fīdēm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur.
 16. Caesar Divitiāco⁸ maxīmam fīdēm hābēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hābet fīdēm. 18. Caesāri fīdēm hābeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of *perniciēs, diēs, spēs, fīdēs*? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See 84.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 93.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under *causā*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ *Divitiāco* — *fīdēm hābēbat*, *had* — confidence IN *Divitiacus*; lit., *had confidence TO Divitiacus*. See 39.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.

LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation.
 A. & G. 131: A. & S. 222 *rēgo*: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 292: G. 131; 132: H. 209; 241–248: C. 76.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ō**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **ē**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e**.

VOCABULARY.

contendō,	ērē,	contendī,	contentūm,	<i>hasten, march rapidly.</i>
dīmittō,	ērē,	dīmīsī,	dīmissūm,	<i>dismiss.</i>
gērō,	ērē,	gessī,	gestūm,	<i>carry, carry on.</i>
mittō,	ērē,	mīsī,	missūm,	<i>send.</i>
tollō,	ērē,	sustūlī,	sublātūm,	<i>lift, take away.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in Itāliam magnis itinēribus¹ contendit. 2. Caesar ad hostes contendit equitatumque omnem mittit.² 3. Caesarem hortemur ut ad hostes contendat. 4. Helvētii lēgatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 5. Helvētii exercitum Rōmānum subjugum³ miserunt. 6. Nunciat Helvētios exercitum Rōmānum subjugum miserisse. 7. Imperator celeriter concilium dimittit. 8. Consul spem fugae tollebat. 9. Tollē, consul, spem fugae. 10. Belgae cum Germanis continenter bellum gesserunt. 11. Si omnes res ad profectionem comparatae sint, in Galliam ulteriorem contendamus. 12. Veremur ut⁴ rex cum hostibus bellum gerat.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶ 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *magnis itinēribus*, by long marches. See 54.

² Name the Stems of *mittō*. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under *jūgum*.

⁴ *ut* after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE : THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131 : A. & S. 223 *rēgor* : B. 87 ; 88 : B. & M. 293 : G. 133 ; 134 : H. 210 : C. 76.

See also 73, *a*, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cingō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>cinxī</i> ,	<i>cinctūm</i> ,	<i>surround, encircle.</i>
<i>dēligō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dēlēgī</i> ,	<i>dēlectūm</i> ,	<i>select, choose.</i>
<i>dīcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dixī</i> ,	<i>dictūm</i> ,	<i>say, tell.</i>
<i>dūcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>duxī</i> ,	<i>ductūm</i> ,	<i>lead, draw.</i>
<i>vincō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>vīcī</i> ,	<i>victūm</i> ,	<i>conquer.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Exercitus Rōmānus āb Helvētiis sūb jūgum missus est.*¹
2. *Orgētōrix dēligītūr.*¹
3. *Cassius lēgātus*² *dēligētūr.*
4. *Vix singūli carri dūcēbantūr.*
5. *Vix singūli carri pēr angustias*

ducti erant. 6. Paenē tōtum oppīdum flūmīne³ cingītūr. 7. Nē āb hostībus³ vincāmur. 8. Sī āb hostībus victī essemus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercītui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāmīnī. 10. Nōn impērātor² dēlīgēris. 11. Carri pēr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vincī nōn pōtērant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingītūr; urbs cingētūr. 14. Castra vallo¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impērātor dēlīgātūr, omnes laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

1 What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? **ANS.** *Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See 64.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁶ See 67.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ See 54.

³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive. A. & G. 132 : A. & S. 222 ; 223 : B. 83 ; 84 : B. & M. 300 ; 301 : G. 135-138 : H. 211 ; 212 : C. 78.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-nto ; see also 99, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY

audiō,	īrē, īvī, itūm,	hear.
con-vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come together, assemble.
mūniō,	īrē, īvī, itūm,	fortify.
per-vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come to, arrive.
vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puēri multas res audiunt. 2. Multae res ā puēris audiuntūr. 3. Milītes impērātōrem audient. 4. Impērātor ā milītibus audiētūr. 5. Belgae tōtūm oppīdum mūnīvērunt.¹ 6. Tōtūm oppīdum ā Belgis mūnītūm est. 7. Sī castra ā milītibus mūnītā essent, hostes nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmūs urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar īn Galliam cītēriōrem vēnīt.² 10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³ 11. Ad rīpam Rhōdāni omnes convēniunt. 12. Milītes hortātūr ūt ād rīpam Rhōdāni convēniant. 13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ūbi (*where*) proptēr vulnēra milītum paucos dies⁴ mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētīi īn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērunt⁵ ēt agros pōpūlābantūr.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural ?
- ² How does *vēnīt* differ from *vēnīt* in meaning ?
- ³ *vidi* from *videō* ; *vici* from *vincō*.
- ⁴ See 93.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action ? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (36)
- ⁷ How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another ?



LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of *căpiō*.
A. & G. 131, page 100 : A. & S. 222 ; 223 : B. 92 : B. & M.
294-297 : G. 139 ; 140 : H. 217-219 : C. 77.

VOCABULARY.

<i>căpiō</i> ,	<i>capērē</i> ,	<i>cēpī</i> ,	<i>captūm</i> ,	<i>take, capture.</i>
<i>cūpiō</i> ,	<i>cūpērē</i> ,	<i>cūpīvī</i> ,	<i>cūpītūm</i> ,	<i>desire.</i>
<i>făciō</i> ,	<i>făcērē</i> ,	<i>fēcī</i> ,	<i>factūm</i> ,	<i>make, do ; itēr făcērē, to march.</i>
<i>fōdiō</i> ,	<i>fōdērē</i> ,	<i>fōdī</i> ,	<i>fossūm</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
<i>fūgiō</i> ,	<i>fūgērē</i> ,	<i>fūgī</i> ,	<i>fūgītūm</i> ,	<i>flee.</i>
<i>jăciō</i> ,	<i>jăcērē</i> ,	<i>jēcī</i> ,	<i>jactūm</i> ,	<i>throw, hurl.</i>
<i>răpiō</i> ,	<i>răpērē</i> ,	<i>răpuī</i> ,	<i>raptūm</i> ,	<i>seize, plunder.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Rōmānī multa oppīda cēpērunt.* 2. *Multa oppīda ā Rōmānis captā sunt.* 3. *Helvētīi magnas possessiōnes cūpient.*

4. Magnae possessiōnes ab Helvētiis cūpientūr. 5. Nostri milītes tela in hostes jāciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Rōmānōrum rāpuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdērant. 8. Fossas multas et magnas fōdērīmūs. 9. Fūgītē,² milītes,³ in urbem. 10. Dux nunciat hostes⁴ oppīdum captūrōs⁵ essē. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppīdum ā milītibus captūm essē.⁶ 12. Una pars inīitium ā flūmīne Rhōdāno cāpit. 13. Lēgātus vēretūr nē lōcus ex internēciōne exercītūs nōmen cāpiāt.⁷ 14. Helvētii pēr prōvinciam nōstram īter fāciēbant. 15. Helvētii pēr agrum Sēquānōrum īter in Aeduōrum fīnes fācient. 16. Iter fāciāmūs in fīnes Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus milītes hortābātūr quō īter cēlērīus⁹ fācērent.⁸ 18. Milītes īter cēlērīus fācēre nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ See LN. V., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why *captūrōs* and not *captūrūs* ?

⁶ *captūm esse*, *had been taken*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁹ *cēlērīus*, an *adjective*, modifying *īter*.



LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Deponent Verbs. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 223, use *rēgor* and *audior* for models : B. 93 : B. & M. 309 ; 310 : G. 145-148 : H. 231, 1-3 ; Note under 232 : C. p. 100.

104. *Ablative with certain Deponents.* A. & G. 249 : A. & S. 419 : B. 258, a : B. & M. 880 : G. 405 : H. 421, I. : C. 167

VOCABULARY.

4 mētor,	mētīrī,	mensūs	sūm,	measure, deal out.
2 nītor,	nītī,	nīsūs or nixūs	sūm,	strive, endeavor.
4 ōrior,	ōrīrī,	ortūs	sūm,	rise, begin.
3 pōrior,	pōtīrī,	pōtītūs	sūm,	get possession of, obtain.
prōficiscor,	prōficiscī,	prōfectūs	sūm,	set out, depart.
sēquor,	sēquī,	sēcūtūs	sūm,	follow.
ūtor,	ūtī.	ūsūs	sūm,	use, make use of.

Conjugate ; name the Stems;¹ give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sēquītūr. 2. Caesar paucos dies³ mōrātūs² hostes sēcūtūs est. 3. Liscus cūm lēgiōnībūs ē castris prōfectūs est. 4. Caesar mātūrat āb urbe prōficiscī. 5. Belgae āb extrēmīs Galliae fīnībūs⁴ ōriuntur. 6. Milītes frūmento nōn ūtentūr. 7. Frūmento ūtī⁵ hōmīnes nōn pōtērant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possūmus. 9. Impēdimentis castrisquē nostri⁶ pōtītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantūr ūt impērio pōtīrentūr. 11. Nītentūr ēt⁷ tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtiantūr.⁷ 12. Galli nītuntūr ūt impēdimentis pōtiantūr. 13. Dux vīrīs⁸ frūmentum mētītūr. 14. Liscus milītībūs frūmentum nōn mensus ērat. 15. Nītāmūr ūt tōtīus Itāliae impērio pōtiāmūr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *The Present Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending *ri* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending *i* in the Third (cf. 28): e. g. HORTārī, VĒRĒrī,

pōtīrī, and **ūtī** are Present Infinitives ; **HORTA**, **VĒRE**, **POTI**, and **ŪT** their Present Stems.

The Supine Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending **ūs** (cf. 50): e. g. **HORTĀTūs**, **VĒRĪTūs**, **PŌTĪTūs**, and **ŪSūs** are Perfect Participles ; **HORTĀT**, **VĒRĪT**, **PŌTĪT**, and **ŪS** their Supine Stems.

² **mōrātūs**, *having delayed*.

⁴ **finībūs**, *limits*.

⁶ **nostri**, *our men*.

⁸ See 39.

³ **dies**, why in the Accusative ?

⁵ See 69.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs ? What is a Deponent Verb ? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent* ? See under **dēpōno**, General Vocabulary.

LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, *b*: A. & S. 425, 426 (1), *a*: B. 221, RULE XII.: B. & M. 938: G. 410: H. 380, I., II., 2, 1): C. 130.

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, *c, d*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2), *a*: B. 249, RULE XXXVII.: B. & M. 932; 933: G. 412, REM. 1: H. 425, I., II.; 426, 2: C. 148, 1, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, *a*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2): B. 254, RULE XXXIX.: B. & M. 941; 943: G. 411: H. 412, I., II., 1: C. 182.

a. **105** answers the question *Whither?* or *To what place?* **106**, *Where?* or *In what place?* **107**, *Whence?* or *From what place?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar Gēnāvam (105) contendit**, *Caesar hastened TO GENEVA.*
2. **Liscus Aquilēiae (106) fuit**, *Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.*
3. **Cassius Rōmā (107) vēnit**, *Cassius came FROM ROME.*
4. **Divitiācus plūrīmūm dōmī pōtērat**, *Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.*

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ŭs, f.

house, home: dŏmī, at home;

dŏmŭm, home, homeward;

dŏmō, from home.

nīhīl (an indecl. neuter noun),

nothing.

Noviodŭnŭm, ī, n.

Noviodunum.

plŭrīmŭs, ā, ŭm,

most: plŭrīmŭm possē, to

be very powerful.

prae-mittŏ, ěrĕ, mīsī, missŭm,

send forward.

rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,

return.

Suĕvī, ōrŭm, m.

the Suevi.

trā-dŭcŏ, dŭcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,

lead across.

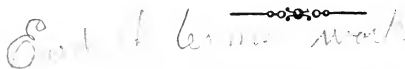
Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Consŭles Rŏmae plŭrīmos¹ annos² fuērunt. 2. Rŏmā vĕnĕrunt lĕgāti Gĕnāvam. 3. Divitiācus plŭrīmum³ dŏmī⁴ atquĕ ĩn rĕlīquā Galliā pŏtĕrat.³ 4. Impĕrātor omnem ĕquī-tātum Noviodŭnum prae-mīsīt. 5. Dŏmŭm mittam pueros mālŏs. 6. Suĕvī ād rīpas Rhĕnī vĕnĕrant ĕt dŏmum rĕvertĕ-bantŭr. 7. Nītĕmur ŭt Norĕiam rĕvertāmŭr. 8. Sī Rŏmā prŏfīcīscāmŭr,⁵ nŏn dŏmŭm rĕvertāmŭr. 9. Vĕrĕmŭr ŭt⁶ nostri āmīcī Rŏmae multos dīes māneant.⁶ 10. Helvĕtīi ĵām pĕr angustias ĕt fīnes Sĕquānŏrum suas cŏpias trādūxĕrant ĕt ĩn Aeduŏrum fīnes pĕrvĕnĕrant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.² See 93.³ See EX. 4.⁴ How is *dōmūs* declined? (97)⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with *si* translated? (LN. XXIX., EX. 1.)⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 9 and LN. XXXVI., EX 5.

LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnūs*, *duō*, *trēs*, and *millē*. A. & G. 94, *a-e*: A. & S. 146; 156; 157 (1), (2); 158-160; 161, *g*: B. 167; 168, REM. 1-5: B. & M. 201-204; 206; 207: G. 92-94; 308: H. 171; 172; 174-179: C. 54; 55, 1, 3.

109. *Extent in Space.* A. & G. 257: A. & S. 423: B. 220, RULE XI: B. & M. 958: G. 335; 336: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Castră āb urbē mīliā passuūm octō ābsunt, the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.*
2. *Flūmēn pēdēs vīgintī altūm est, the river is TWENTY FEET deep.*
3. *Mons pēdēs nongentōs altūs est, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.*

VOCABULARY.

altēr, altēră, altērūm,

one of two, the other.

lātūs, ā, ūm,

wide.

longūs, ā, ūm,

long.

passūs, ūs, m.

step, pace; *millē passūs*, a mile; *lit.*, a thousand paces.

pēs, pēdis, m.

foot.

pōnō, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsitūm,

place, put; castrā pōnērē, to pitch a camp.

vīgīliā, ae, f.

watch; dē prīmā vīgīliā, in the first watch.

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pēdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mons dēcēm miliā² trēcentos pēdes altus est. 3. Fossa pēdes trēcentos longa est, sex pēdes alta. 4. Fossa pēdes quindēcim lāta est. 5. Milītes duas fossas quindēcim pēdes lātas fōdērunt. 6. Caesar dōmum³ tertiam⁴ lēgiōnem mīsīt. 7. Dē tertiā vīgīliā⁵ centūm ēt trīgintā quinquē milītes praemittit. 8. Miliā passuum⁶ triā āb urbe castra pōsuīt. 9. Oppīda ād⁷ quadrāgintā ēt vīcos ād quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant itīnēra duō; ūnum pēr Sēquānos; altērum pēr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ ērat cāpītum Helvētiōrum⁹ miliā dūcentā ēt sexāgintā triā. 12. Circīter miliā hōmīnum centūm ēt trīgintā sūperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does **lātum** modify? What is it modified by?

² Spelled also with two l's: **milliā**.

³ See 105.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is **tertiā**?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia*, *secunda vigilia*, *tertia vigilia*, *quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *ad* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa*, the sum total.

⁹ *capitum Helvetiorum*, of the *Helvetii*; lit. of the heads of the *Helvetii*.



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 77, 6, a: A. & S. 300, a: B. 151: B. & M. 176: H. 125; 126: C. 106, 1, 2.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 424: B. 252, RULE XXXVIII.: B. & M. 949: G. 392: H. 429: C. 185. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When?* *At what time?* *Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Diē septimō pervēnit*, he arrived ON THE SEVENTH DAY.
2. *Proximā noctē castrā mōvit*, THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.

VOCABULARY.

<i>dī-vidō, vidērē, vīsī, vīsūm,</i>	<i>divide, separate.</i>
<i>in-cōlō, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm,</i>	<i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
<i>jusjūrandūm; jūrisjūrandī, n.</i>	<i>oath.</i>
<i>lācūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>lake.</i>
<i>mensīs, īs, m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
<i>pōtens, pōtentīs, adj.</i>	<i>able, powerful.</i>
<i>prō, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>before, for.</i>
<i>respublicā, rēipublicae, f.</i>	<i>republic, commonwealth.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. *Galli Rōmānis*¹ *jusjūrandum dēdērunt.*
2. *Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandum dēdisse.*²
3. *Multas res jūrējūrando*³

sanxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rempublicam lēgātus sex lēgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublica; prō castris. 6. Pēr trēs pōtentissimos pōpulos tōtius⁵ Galliae. 7. In fīnes Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt. 8. Proxīma nocte dē quarta vīgilia⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus īn castra rēduxit. 11. Dōmi⁷ mansērunt septēm menses.⁸ 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur⁹ ūt sōlis occāsu prōfīciscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis dīvīsa¹¹ in partes trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incōlunt Belgae, āliam¹² Aquītāni,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. A lācu Lemanno ād montem Jūram fossam vīgintī pēdes¹⁴ lātam fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vīgilia cūm lēgiōnibus tribus ē castris prōfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sūb monte castra pōsuisse milia¹⁴ passuum āb nostris castris octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, against.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like tōtus? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — dīvīsa is the same as dīvīsa — est.¹² Understand partem.¹³ Subject of incōlunt understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies milia.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of *ēgō, tū, suī*. A. & G. 98, 1, 2, b, 3; 99, d, e: A. & S. 178; 179; 186; 431, e; 449, (1): B. 171; 172, a, b, REM. 2; 173, a: B. & M. 230-232; 234; 236: G. 97-100: H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185: C. 57, 1.

Translate and parse.

1. Egō¹ sum mālus² sēd tū es bōnus. 2. Egō vōs sūb jūgum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ āmīci sūmus. 4. Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Egō dē prīma vīgīlia prōfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses. 6. Nostrā consīlia hostībūs ēnunciantur. 7. Ob-sīdes intēr sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Intēr sē jusjūrandum dant. 9. Omnes linguā,⁶ instītūtis,⁶ lēgībūs⁶ intēr sē⁵ diffērunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētii suīs fīnībūs⁷ Germānōs prōhībēbant. 11. Caesar suōs milītes īn Galliam mittet sēd īn prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuūs filiūs īn Galliam cītēriōrem īter fāciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — *ēgō* is a personal pronoun ; declined, *ēgō, meī, mīhī, mē, mē* ; Plural, *nōs, nostrūm* or *nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs* ; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of *sūm* ; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 86.

⁴ *inter sēsē, to each other ; lit. among themselves.*

⁵ *inter sē, from one another.*

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ *nostrōs, ours : sc. milītes.*

⁹ See 105.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of **hic, illē, istē, ipsē, is, idēm.** A. & G. 100–102: A. & S. 180–182: B. 173, b, 1–3: B. & M. 239; 243: G. 101; 102: H. 186, I.–VI.: C. 59; 60.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrūm¹ omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē diffērunt. 3. Eōrum² unā pars initium cāpit ā flūmīne Rhōdāno. 4. Mīnime³ ād eōs mercātōres⁴ saepe commeant. 5. Eī filiā suā in matrīmōnium dat. 6. Is sibi⁵ lēgatiōnem ād cīvītates suscepit. 7. Eā res est⁶ Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdēm die⁷ cū duābūs⁸ lēgiōnibus prōfiscētur ēt iis⁹ dūcibus. 9. Ipsē¹⁰ ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābet. 10. Ipsī in eōrum¹¹ finibus bellum gērunt. 11. Milia¹² passuum triā⁸ āb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdēm¹³ nostra consilia hostibus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsē dē quarta vīgilia eōdēm itinēre¹⁴ ād eōs contendit ēquitatūque¹⁵ omnem antē sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. **hi omnes diffērunt**, *all THESE differ*; **ad has suspiciōnes**, *to THESE suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² **is** is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it*; e. g. **is sibi suscepit**, *HE took upon himself*; **ād eōs**, *to THEM*; **in eōrum finibus**, *in THEIR territory*; **ejūs milites**, *HIS soldiers*; **ei dat**, *he gives TO HIM*.

³ **mīnime** modifies **saepe**.

⁵ See 67.

⁷ See 111.

⁴ See 32.

⁶ **est ēnunciāta** = **ēnunciāta est**.

⁸ See 108.

⁹ Is **iis** used substantively or adjectively?

¹⁰ **ipsē** — **habet**, *he himself has.*

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See 109.

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one, man, men, persons, or soldiers*, if masculine; *thing or things*, if neuter: e. g. **hic est fortis**, *THIS ONE is brave, or THIS MAN is brave*; **ab iisdēm**, *by THE SAME PERSONS*; **idēm cōnantur**, *they attempt THE SAME THING.*

¹⁴ **eōdem itinēre**, *by the same route.*

¹⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103; 104, *e*: A. & S. 184: B. 173, *c*, REM. 1: B. & M. 245: G. 103: H. 187, 2: C. 62, 1.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198: A. & S. 342: B. 278, RULE LIII.: B. & M. 683; 684: G. 615; 616: H. 445, NOTE 1: C. 114, 1.

EXAMPLES.

- Aquitānia ād eam partem Oceāni, quae est ād Hispāniam, pertinet**, *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain.*
- Flūmīne Rhēno, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit**, *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*
- Proxīmiquē sunt Germānis, quībuscum¹ bellum gērunt**, *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Proxīmiquē sunt Germānis,² quī³ trans Rhēnum incōlunt. 2. Ad montem Jūram, quī fīnes Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dīvidit. 3. Ab Ocēlo, quōd est cītēriōris prōvīnciae

oppidum⁴ extrēmum. 4. Allobrōges, quī trans Rhōdānum vīcos possēssionēsq̃ habēbant, ād Caesārem vēniunt. 5. Vocat Castīcum, cūjūs⁵ pāter regnum multos annos⁶ obtīnuērat. 6. Pontem,⁷ quī est ād Gēnāvam, jūbet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undīque lōci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii contīnentur: ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmīne¹¹ Rhēno¹² lātissīmo atq̃ altissīmo, qui¹⁶ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit; altera¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissīmo, qui est intēr Sēquānos ēt Helvētios; tertiā¹⁴ lacu Lemanno ēt flūmīne Rhōdāno, quī prōvinciam nostram āb Helvētīis dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very¹⁵ soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that *cūm* is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 86.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — *qui* is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *qui, quae, quōd, cūjus*, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent *Germānis* (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of *incōlunt* (32).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ *cūjūs, whose.*

⁶ See 93.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ *ūna ex parte, on one side.*

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ *alterā, second.*

¹⁴ *tertiā, sc. ex parte.*

¹⁵ Translate *the very* by the proper case of *ipsē*.

¹⁶ A. & G. 199: A. & S. 343 a: B. 286, d: B. & M. 694: G. 616, 3, II.: H. 445, 4: C. 113, 5.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quīs** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **āliquīs** and **quīs**. A. & G. 104, *a, e*; 105, *d*: A. & S. 183; 184, *a, b*: B. 173, *d*, REM. 1, *e, 1, 3*: B. & M. 246; 249-251; 1041, *second part*: G. 104, REMARK; 105: H. 188, I., II., 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, NOTE 1: C. 62, 2, 4, 5, 13.

a. **āli-quīs** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> āli-quīs,	āli-quīd,
	<i>Gen.</i> āli-cūjūs,	āli-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> āli-cuī,	āli-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> āli-quēm,	āli-quīd,
	<i>Abl.</i> āli-quō,	āli-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> āli-quī,	
	<i>Gen.</i> āli-quōrūm,	
	<i>Dat.</i> āli-quībūs,	
	<i>Acc.</i> āli-quōs,	
	<i>Abl.</i> āli-quībūs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> āli-quīs and āli-quī,	āli-quā,	āli-quōd,
	<i>Gen.</i> āli-cūjūs,	āli-cūjūs,	āli-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> āli-cuī,	āli-cuī,	āli-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> āli-quēm,	āli-quām,	āli-quōd,
	<i>Abl.</i> āli-quō,	āli-quā,	āli-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> āli-quī,	āli-quae,	āli-quā,
	<i>Gen.</i> āli-quōrūm,	āli-quārūm,	āli-quōrūm,
	<i>Dat.</i> āli-quībūs,	āli-quībūs,	āli-quībūs,
	<i>Acc.</i> āli-quōs,	āli-quās,	āli-quā,
	<i>Abl.</i> āli-quībūs,	āli-quībūs,	āli-quībūs.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quis mē vocat? WHO calls me?
2. Quē vīdisti? WHOM did you see?
3. Quid dōmum nōn vēnērunt? WHY have they not come home?
4. Aliquē ad mē mittent, they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. Aliquid accidit, SOMETHING has happened.
6. Si quid accīdat Rōmānis, if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quis vōs vocāvit? 2. Quē vīdeo? 3. Aliquē vīdi.
4. Aliquōs ad eū mīserunt. 5. Aliquē locum occupāvit.
6. Cūm aliquibūs principum vēnit. 7. Si quis vēniat, laeter.
8. Quid nōn dōmi fuisti? 9. Quae est mulier quae vēnit?
10. Si quid mīhi accīdat, nōn laetēris. 11. Si quid Rōmānis accīdat, nōn fortitēr pugnent.
12. Aliquē ad tē mittam. 13. Aliquis dixit hunc essē consulem.
14. Eū hortābor ut cūm aliquibūs militum prōficiscātur.
15. Vereor nē quis vēniat.
16. Vereor nē quid eī accīdat.
17. Ut aliquōs virōrum mittant, eos hortēmur.
18. Cūm aliquibūs principum illē vēnit.

LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, h; 154, a, b; 208: A. & S. 74 (7); 562; 565; 566: B. 180, the whole; 330, RULE LXXXI.: B. & M. 488-503; 1369: G. 15, IV., 3; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2: C. 100; 257.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.

or; aut — aut, either — or.

ēt — et, conj.

both — and.

itāquē, conj.

accordingly, therefore.

nām, conj.	for.
ně, nonně, nŭm,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
něquě, conj.	and not; něquě — něquě, neither — nor.
postquām, conj.	after, as soon as.
proptěreā, adv.	for this reason.
quamquām, conj.	although.
quōd, conj.	because.
sěd, conj.	but.

Translate, and parse² the conjunctions.

1. Impěrātor ęt³ magnus ęt fortis est. 2. Něquě³ magni něquě fortes sunt consŭles. 3. Dux nōn magnus est sěd fortis. 4. Dumnōřigem vōcat eīquě⁴ filiam suam ĩn mātřimōnium dat. 5. Itāquě rem suscepit. 6. Hōřŭm⁵ omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae, proptěreā quōd ā cultu atquě hŭmānĭtāte prōvinciae longissĭme⁶ absunt. 7. Helvėtii ĩter pěr prōvinciam fāciunt, proptěreā quōd āliud⁷ ĩter hābent nullum.⁷ 8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurĭnus⁸; nām omnis cĭvĭtas Helvėtia ĩn quattuor pāgos dĭvĭsa est. 9. Aut³ suis fĭnĭbus⁹ eos prōhĭbent, aut ipsĭ¹⁰ ĩn eōrum fĭnĭbus bellum ġerunt. 10. Mĭles, quamquām est fortis, nōn pugnābit. 11. Postquām Caesar pervēnit, ĩtā respondit. 12. Fortisně¹¹ est consul? 13. Nonně fortes sunt consŭles? 14. Nŭm fortis est consul? 15. Sĭ quĭd hābērem,¹² ĭd tĭbi dārem. 16. Nĭtĭtur ũt vincat.¹³ 17. Nonně consŭles dōmum vēnērānt? 18. Nŭm Tĭtus lēgātus circŭm Ģenāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ně* is used to ask for information merely; *nonně*, when the answer *yes*, and *nŭm*, when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. *bōnusně est puer?* *is the boy good?* *nonně bōnus est puer?* *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? *nŭm bōnus est puer?* *the boy is not good is he?*

² *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g. in sentence 6, *quōd* is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal*, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause *proptěreā* — *absunt* with the principal clause *hōřŭm* — *Belgae*.

³ When a conjunction is doubled, as *et — et*, *aut — aut*, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See 24.

⁸ Use the same word, *Tigurinus*, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹⁰ What does *ipsi* emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle *nē* is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² *hābērem*, *I had*.

¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.



LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 171–182, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. 309–315: B. 203, *a–g*; 288, *a–f*: B. & M. 1399–1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413: G. 192; 193; 474, 1–4; 475; 505–508: H. 345–351; 354–361: C. 107; 108.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, *īs*, *m.* and *f.*

citizen.

in-fluō, *fluērē*, *fluxī*, *fluxūm*,

flow into, empty.

inter-ficiō, *ficērē*, *fēcī*, *fectūm*,

kill.

poscō, *poscērē*, *pōposcī*, (no supine)

demand.

postquām, *conj.*

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, *spondērē*, *spondī*, *sponsūm*,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyze¹ the following sentences.

1. *Ejus rei pōpulus Rōmānus est testis.* 2. *Divīco respondit² ejus rei pōpulum Rōmānum essē testem.* 3. *Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consūlem interfēcērat ēt ejus exercitum sūb jūgum mīserat.* 4. *Postquām Caesar pervēnit, obsīdes pōposcit.* 5. *Flūmen³ est Arar, quōd īn Rhōdānum*

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui în flūmen Rhödănum influit, ād montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquănōrum āb Helvētiis dīvīdit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rēlinquēbātur ūna pěr Sēquănos via, quā proptēr angustias īre (*to go*) nōn pōtērant. 9. Ob eas 'causas eī mūnitiōni,⁵ quam fēcērat, Tītum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ūt tē vīdeam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of **respondit**?

³ See 64.

⁴ See 64; what is the subject of **es**?

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, *e*; 289: A. & S. 542: B. 53, *d*: B. & M. 265, *last clause*: H. 548: C. 65, 4.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290: A. & S. 543-545: B. 323, RULE LXXV.: B. & M. 1343: G. 278; 279: H. 550: C. 249.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292: A. & S. 547: B. 318: B. & M. 1350: G. 667-671: H. 549, 1-5: C. 250.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sēsē omnes flentes Caesāri ād pēdes prōjēcērunt**, *all weeping threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.*
2. **Liscus multos dies mōrātus prōfectus est**, *Liscus HAVING DELAYED many days set out; or, Liscus, AFTER HE HAD DELAYED many days, set out.*
3. **Caesar eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscēpit**, *Caesar HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the war; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties, undertook the war.*
4. **Helvētii ējus adventu commōti lēgātos mittunt**, *the Helvētii BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) by his arrival send legates.*

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,	<i>lead to, influence.</i>
fleō, flērē, flēvi, flētūm,	<i>weep.</i>
in-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,	<i>lead into, induce.</i>
pētō, pētērē, pētīvī and pētīi, pētītūm,	<i>beseech, ask, beg for.</i>
prō-jiciō, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm,	<i>throw forward; sē prōjicērē, to throw one's self down.</i>

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes¹ pācem pētiērunt. 2. Mūliēres flentes vīros² implōrābant. 3. Belgae spectant in ōrientem sōlem. 4. Hostes in nostros vēnientes tēla conjīciēbant. 5. Milītes sēsē Tīto³ ād pēdes prōjīcient. 6. Helvētii his rēbus⁴ adducti⁵ cūm proximis civitātibus pācem confirmant. 7. Liscus ōrātiōne Caesāris adductus lōcūtus est. 8. Hac ōrātiōne adducti intēr sē⁶ jusjūrandum dant. 9. Is⁷ regni cūpīditāte in-

ductus conjūratiōnem nobilitātis fecit. 10. Sēquāni paucos dies mōrāti ād⁸ Gēnāvam prōfecti sunt. 11. Helvētīi omnium rērum īnōpiā adducti lēgātos ād eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertiā vīgīlia prōfectus ād⁹ Gēnāvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷ 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² **vīros**, husbands.

³ See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See 54.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4. ⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ **ād**, towards, for.

⁹ **ād**, in the vicinity of.

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.



LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 255 and NOTE: A. & S. 422 d: B. 264, RULE XLIX., a-c: B. & M. 964-966; G. 408; 409: H. 431, 1, 2, 4: C. 187, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlibus**, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls*; or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*.
2. **Hoc responso dāto discessit**,

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. <i>this reply having been given</i> b. <i>when this reply had been given</i> c. <i>having given this reply</i> d. <i>after giving this reply</i> e. <i>after he had given this reply</i> 	}	<i>he departed.</i>
---	---	---------------------

VOCABULARY.

con-vertō, vertēre, vertī, versūm,	<i>turn about, change.</i>
dis-cēdō, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm,	<i>depart.</i>
ibī, adv.	<i>there.</i>
rē-liquō, liquērē, liquī, lictūm,	<i>leave behind, leave.</i>
responsūm, ī, n.	<i>answer, reply.</i>
rē-vertor, vertī, versū sūm,	<i>return.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. **Hāc ōrātiōne¹ hābitā² Caesar concīlium dīmīsīt.**
2. **Hāc ōrātiōne āb Divitiāco hābitā omnes auxiliūm pētiērunt.**
3. **Hāc ōrātiōne hābitā conversae sunt omnium mentes.**
4. **Convōcātis eōrum³ principibus Caesar grāvīter⁴ eos accūsāt.**
5. **Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlibus conjūrātiōnem nobilitātis fēcīt.**
6. **Ibī Centrōnes⁵ lōcis supēriōribus occūpātis itinēre⁶ exercitūm prōhibēre cōnantur.**
7. **Mūnītis castris duas ibī lēgiōnes rēliquit ēt partem auxiliōrum.**
8. **Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dōmum⁷ rēverti coepērunt (*began*).**
9. **Convōcātis eōrum principibus, quōrum⁸ magnam cōpiam in castris hābēbat, grāvīter eos accūsāt.**
10. **Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ād rīpas Rhēni vērērant, dōmum rēverti coepērunt.**

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *hăbītă*, from *hăbĕo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *grăvĭter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See 105.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrū*? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.



LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERRO.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *fĕrĕ*. A. & G. 139: A. & S. 245: B. 109, IV.: B. & M. 422-424: G. 186: H. 292: C. 85, 1.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxĭlium fert. 2. Auxĭlium milĭtĭbus² ā dūce fertŭr. 3. Sĭ dux suis auxĭlium fĕrăt,³ laetentur.³ 4. Sĭ auxĭlium milĭtĭbus ā dūce fĕrătŭr,³ laetentur.³ 5. Ii⁴ suis auxĭlium ferrĕ nōn pōterant. 6. Fertĕ, milĭtes, vestris¹ auxĭ-

lium. 7. Pöpus Römānus diū injūrias tūlīt. 8. Injūriae ā pöpulo Römāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pöpulum Römānum hortātus est ūt⁵ diū injūrias ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixīt pöpulum Römānum diū injūrias tūlissē. 11. Nūmērus eōrum,⁴ qui⁶ arma fērēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma fērēbantūr, magnus fuit. 13. Nūmērus eōrum, qui arma ferrē pōtērant, magnus fuit. 14. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma ferrī pōtērant,⁷ parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxiliū ferrēs, Galli vincērent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Römānis auxiliū tūlissēt, vīcissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things, possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., EX. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *sī, nī, nē, or nūm*? How is it declined? See LN. LX.



LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF **FERO**. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253: A. & S. 412: B. 261, RULE XLVI.: B. & M. 889: G. 398: H. 424: C. 180. This answers the question *In what respect*?

EXAMPLES.

1. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. Nūmēro ād duōdēcīm, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

af-fērō,	af-ferrē,	at-tŭlī,	al-lātŭm, ¹	<i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i>
con-fērō,	con-ferrē,	con-tŭlī,	col-lātŭm,	<i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i>
dif-fērō,	dif-ferrē,	dis-tŭlī,	dī-lātŭm,	<i>carry different ways ; differ.</i>
in-fērō,	in-ferrē,	in-tŭlī,	il-lātŭm,	<i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i>
rē-fērō,	rē-ferrē,	rē-tŭlī,	rē-lātŭm,	<i>bring back, carry back.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,² institūtis,² lēgibus² intēr sē diffērunt.
 2. Oppīda sua omnia nŭmēro² ād duōdēcim³ incendunt.
 3. Eō⁴ circīter⁵ hōmīnum nŭmēro sēdēcim mīlia³ mīsīt.
 4. Helvētīi rēlīquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Helvētīi tōtī Gallīae⁶ bellum infērēbant. 6. Pars cīvītātis Helvētīae insignem cālāmītātem pōpŭlo Rōmāno intŭlērat. 7. Helvētīi mīnus fācīle fīnītīmīs bellum inferre pōtērant.⁷ 8. Obsīdes, arma, servī confēruntur. 9. Aedui dīxērunt frūmentum conferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcīnas¹⁰ in ūnum lōcum conferri⁸ jussīt.⁹ 11. Helvētīi cŭm omnībŭs suis carrīs sēcŭtī¹¹ impēdīmēta¹⁰ īn ūnum lōcum contŭlērunt. 12. His responsīs¹² ād Caesārem rēlātīs ītērŭm ād eum Caesar lēgātōs cŭm his mandātīs mittīt.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
 2. They will burn their cities, about five in number. 3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹³ war upon the Gauls. 5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae. 6. The baggage will be collected into one place. 7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Accent the compounds of *fēro* correctly: *affēro*, *afferre*, *attūli*, *allātum*.

² See 124.

³ See 108.

⁴ *eō* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

⁵ *circitēr* modifies the numeral.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ *pōtērant*, *could*.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ *jussit*, from *jūbeo*.

¹⁰ What is the difference between *sarcīnae* and *impēdimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcīna* and *impēdimentum*.

¹¹ *sēcūti* from *sēquor*; where is it made?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.



LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*. A. & G. 138: A. & S. 242-244: B. 109, VI.: B. & M. 417-419: G. 189: H. 293: C. 85, 3, 4, 5.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertō, *vertērē*, *vertī*, *versūm*,

turn away.

mālō, *mallē*, *māluī*,

be more willing.

nōlō, *nollē*, *nōluī*,

be unwilling, not wish.

undē, adv.

from which place, whence.

vācō, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm*,

be unoccupied.

vōlō, *vellē*, *vōluī*,

be willing, wish.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. *Aeduos*¹ *flāgītāre*² *Tītus frūmentum*¹ *vult*. 2. *Helvētiis*³ *bellum inferrē vōlūmūs*. 3. *Galli fīnītīmīs bellum inferrē vōlūerant*. 4. *Sī lēgātus pugnāre vēlīt, hostes fūgiant*. 5. *Nūm*⁴ *prōfīcisci dē tertiā vīgīliā vultīs?* 6. *Dumnōrix quām*⁵ *plūrīmas cīvītātes hābēre vōlēbāt*. 7. *Consul impēdimenta*⁶ *īn ūnum lōcum conferri vult*. 8. *Sī vīs mē*⁶ *flēre*.

9. Montem ā Cassio occŭpāri vŏluīt. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābiēno occŭpāri vŏluīt, āb hostībŭs tēnētŭr. 11. Dīcit vellē sēsē⁶ dē rēpublica⁷ cŭm eo lŏqui. 12. Caesār āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nŏlēbāt. 13. Nŏluīt eum lŏcum vācāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesārem āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nollē. 15. Nŏluīt eum lŏcum, undē Helvētii discessērant, vācāre. 16. Vir injūrias diŭ ferre nŏlēt. 17. Sī lēgātus īter fācēre nŏlit, milītes laetentŭr. 18. Vēreor nē⁸ dux suis auxīlium ferre nŏlīt.⁸ 19. Iter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant ā quībŭs discēdēre nŏlēbāt. 20. Pugnāre² Helvētii mālunt quām fŭgēre.² 21. Nonnē māvīs tuis⁹ auxīlium ferrē quām fŭgere? 22. Omnes virtūte¹⁰ praecēdēre māvult quām essē consul. 23. Gallis prŏdesse quām bellum inferrē māluit. 24. Exercītui praeesse mālēt quām dŏmi¹¹ mănēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.³ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See 71.

² See A. & G. 271, a : A. & S. 532 : B. 315, f, 3 : B. & M. 1152 ; 1153 : G. 424 : H. 533 : C. 241.

³ See 67.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

⁶ See 53.

⁷ See 110.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹⁰ See 124.

¹¹ See 106.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eō** and **fiō**. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 246; 248, a: B. 109, II., V.: B. & M. 413-415; 426-429: G. 135; 188, REMARK: H. 294; 295, 1, 3: C. 85, 2, 7.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesāris adventu certior factus est**, *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pōuisse**, *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesārem certiōrem faciunt hostes transīre**, *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certūs, ā, ūm,	<i>certain, sure; certior fiērī, to be informed; lit., to be made more certain.</i>
eō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>go.</i>
ex-eō, irē, ii, itūm,	<i>go out, go forth, depart.</i>
fiō, fiērī, factūs sūm,	<i>be made, become, occur.</i>
trans-eō, irē, ii, itūm,	<i>go across, cross.</i>

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Dōmum¹ eunt; Rōmam ibo; Bibracte¹ eāmūs.²
2. Pēr angustias ibāmūs; pēr Gallōrum fines ivērunt.
3. I,³ miles, dōmum; itē, pueri, dōmum.
4. Hostes pēr nostram prōvinciam ivērant.
5. Lēgātus Bibracte irē contendit.
6. Caesar cūm his quinque lēgiōnībus irē⁴ contendit.
7. In eam partem Galliae itūrōs⁵ esse Helvētios dixit.
8. Proptēr angustias irē⁴ nōn pōtērant.
9. Helvētii dē finībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis exhibant.
10. Nītuntur ūt ē finībus exeant.⁶
11. Magnus nūmērus eōrum⁷ dōmo⁸ exhibīt.
12. Hic

pāgus ūnus dōmo patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā⁹ exiērāt.¹⁶
 13. Flūmen Helvētii rātibus¹⁰ transībant. 14. Sī flūmen
 transeant,¹¹ eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhōdānum transirē
 cōnentur, prōhībeāmus. 16. Boii¹² trans Rhēnum incōluērant
 ēt īn agrum Norīcum¹² transiērant. 17. Undīquē ūno tem-
 pōre īn hostes impētus fiēbāt. 18. His rēbus¹³ fiēbāt.
 19. Dē ējus⁷ adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Cae-
 sar eōdem die āb explōrātōrībūs certior factūs suas cōpias
 praemittere vōlēbat. 21. Duo vīri consūles¹⁴ facti ērunt.
 22. Pēr explōrātōres Caesar certior factūs est Sēquānos pēr
 prōvinciam īter fēcissē.¹⁵

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What question do dōmum and Bibracte answer? See 105, a.
- ² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7. ³ In what is the Imperative used? (47)
- ⁴ See 69. ⁵ Why is itūros in the Acc. Plural?
- ⁶ How is the Subjunctive with ūt to be translated after verbs of *striving*
 and *endeavoring*?
- ⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
- ⁸ What question does dōmo answer?
- ⁹ See 111. ¹⁰ rātis, is, f. raft.
- ¹¹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 1. ¹² See GEN. VY.
- ¹³ See 79. ¹⁴ See 64.
- ¹⁵ See Ex. 2. ¹⁶ exiērāt = exivērāt.



LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, a-c, NOTE: A. & S. 249 (1)-(3): B. 111, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 434-437: G. 190, 5: H. 297, I., 2: C. 86, 5, 6.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145: A. & S. 250: B. 112; 113: B. & M. 451; 452; 454: G. 199: H. 298; 299: C. 87.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270: A. & S. 531: B. 315, a, b: B. & M. 1147: G. 423: H. 538: C. 236, I.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfăcile est impērio pōtīri (129)**, *it is very easy TO GET POSSESSION OF the government.*
2. **Mīhi ire (129) licet**, *it is permitted me TO GO ; or, I may go.*
3. **Mīhi ire licuit**, *it was permitted me TO GO ; or, I might have gone.*
4. **Rōgat ūt id sibi făcēre liceat**, *he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this ; better, he asks permission to do this.*
5. **Rōgābat ūt id sibi făcēre licēret**, *he was asking that it be permitted him TO DO this ; or, permission to do this.*
6. **Me ire (129) oportet**, *it is necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to go.*
7. **Me ire oportuit**, *it was necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to have gone.*
8. **Dicit me ire oportēre**, *he says it is necessary that I should go ; or, he says that I ought to go.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mēmīnērunt,¹ ōdērunt. 2. Mēmīnēram Tītum, vīdēram Cassium. 3. Memento vērīre²; dicit sē mēmīnisse. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnōrigem ōdisse Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 5. Et tē ēt illum³ ōdērāmus. 6. Nēquē⁴ mē nēquē eum ōdit. 7. Divitiācus multis cū lacrimis Caesārem obsēcrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvi, qui⁶ ād rīpas Rhēni vērērant, dōmum rēverti coepērunt. 9. Omnes mīlites Rhōdānum transīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum⁷ conferri⁸ oportet. 11. Nos⁷ Rhēnum transīre oportuit.⁹ 12. Dicit illum ād sē vērīre oportēre.¹⁰ 13. Caesārem dē ējus adventu certiōrem¹¹ fīrī oportuit. 14. Rōgāvērunt ūt sibi¹² licēret concīlium tōtīus Galliae convōcāre. 15. Rōgāvit ūt sibi ire licēret. 16. Tībi eo die ire licēbit. 17. Perfăcile est tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtīri. 18. Tībi Caesārem certiōrem făcēre dē meo adventu licet.¹³ 19. Tībi dōmum ire licuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?
² See 52.
³ *illum*, *that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.
⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3. ⁵ See 69.
⁶ Where is *qui* made and why? ⁷ See 53.
⁸ See 129. ⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.
¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *vēnīre*; *illum* — *vēnīre*, the subject of *oportēre*; *illum* — *oportēre*, the object of *dicit*.
¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., Ex. 1.
¹² How does this *sibi* differ from the *sibi* in sentence 15?
¹³ What is the subject of *licet*? ¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.



LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 109, *a*; 129: A. & S. 229 (1), (2): B. 94, *a*, *b*: B. & M. 328; 329: G. 149; 150; 239; 243: H. 233; 234: C. 82.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 232: A. & S. 383: B. 248, RULE XXXVI.: B. & M. 847: G. 353: H. 388: C. 157.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sūm**, *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. **Doctūrus ērat (fuit)**, *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. **Audiendi sūmus**, *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. **Tībi (131) audiendi sūmus**, *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. **Agri consūli vastandi ērant (fuērunt)**, *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ērat**, *the flag had to be displayed.*
7. **Oppīdum oppugnandum ērit**, *the town will have to be stormed.*
8. **Oppīdum vōbis mūniendum ērit**, *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obsīdes tībi dātūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mīhi obsīdes dātūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūros essē. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduos³ flāgītātūrus lēgātus ērat. 7. Dōmum ītūri sūmus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfūtūri estis. 9. Nōbis⁵ bellum gērendum ērit. 10. Duo consūles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vēnientes tēla nōbis conjīcienda ērant. 12. Op-pīdum lēgāto expugnandum ērit. 13. Pēr Alpes mīlītibus īter faciendum ērit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesāri īn Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sībi essē existīmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior⁸ faciendus est. 19. Caesāri omnia ūno tempōre ērant āgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ ērat insigne, quūm ād arma concurrī¹³ ōportēret¹¹; signum tūba dandum⁹; āb ōpēre rēvōcandi¹² mīlītes; qui¹⁶ paulo longius¹⁴ aggēris pētendi causā¹⁵ prōcessērant arcessēndi¹²; ācies instruenda,⁹ mīlītes cōhortandi.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- ³ See 71. ⁴ See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- ⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ *mātūrandum est* has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
- ⁸ See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. ⁹ Supply *ērat*.
- ¹⁰ Why is *quod* in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of *oportēret*? Translate by the Indicative.
- ¹² Supply *ērant*. ¹³ *concurri*, to rush.
- ¹⁴ *paulo longius*, a little too far.
- ¹⁵ *aggēris* — *causā*, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of *qui* is *ii*, which is the subject of *arcessendi* (*ērant*).



LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 226; 227: A. & S. 374 (1); 376: B. 241, RULE XXIX.; 244, RULE XXXII.: B. & M. 824; 831: G. 345: H. 385, I., II., and NOTE 3: C. 153; 155.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Civitatī (132) persuāsit ūt exīrent,**¹ *he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.*
2. **Novis rēbus studēbat,** *he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.*
3. **Allobrogibus impērāvit,** *he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.*
4. **Plācuit ei (132) ut mittēret,**¹ *it pleased HIM to send.*
5. **Sī Allobrogibus satisfāciat,** *if he should give satisfaction TO THE ALLOBROGES.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc² faciilius eis persuāsit, quōd³ undīquē loci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii continentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ēt Marco Pisōne consūlibus,⁵ regni cūpīditāte inductus⁶ conjūrātiōnem nobīlītātis fēcīt ēt civitatī²⁰ persuāsīt, ūt dē finibus suis cūm omnibus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingis, finītīmīs,⁷ ūti, eōdem ūsi⁸ consilio,⁹ oppīdis⁵ suis vīcisquē exustis,¹⁰ unā cūm iis prōficiāntur.¹ 4. Orgētōrix cūpīditāte regni adductus⁶ nōvis rēbus¹¹ studēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnōrigem fāvēre Helvētiis sēd ōdisse¹² Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrogibus impērāvit ūt iis frūmenti cōpiam faciērent.¹ 7. Quamobrem plācuit¹³ ei ūt ād Ariovistum lēgātos mittēret. 8. Huic lēgiōni Caesar indulserat praecipuē. 9. Sī¹⁴ Aeduis dē¹⁵ injūriis, quas ipsis¹⁶ sociisquē eōrum¹⁷ intūlerint,¹⁸ itēm sī Allobrogibus sātisfāciānt, cūm iis pācem faciāt.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁸ the same plan, burn up¹⁰ their houses and set out¹ in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁵ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁶ and their¹⁷ allies. 7. We can¹⁹ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

² See 79.

³ *quōd* is a *conjunction*; what kind of a clause does it introduce?

⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79.

⁵ See 122.

⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ *ūsi* from *ūtor*, to adopt; lit., having adopted, made use of.

⁹ See 104.

¹⁰ *oppīdis* — *exustis*, to burn up their towns, etc.; lit., their towns, etc. having been burned up. (122)

¹¹ See Ex. 2.

¹² What kind of a verb is *ōdisse*? (127)

¹³ *plācuit* is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?

¹⁴ Sc. *sātisfāciant*.

¹⁵ *de*, for.

¹⁶ See 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

¹⁸ *intūlērint* from *infēro*; render it by the Perfect Indicative.

¹⁹ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 1.

²⁰ *civītāti*, state, is used here for *civibus*, citizens; hence the dependent clause has *exirent* instead of *exiret*.



LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 261, RULE XLVI., c: B. & M. 895: G. 399: H. 417: C. 174.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472; 473, a: B. 309, RULE LXVIII.: B. & M. 1193; 1197: G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.: C. 203, 1 and note.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōn amplius milibus (133) passuum octōdēcim ābērat,**
he was not more THAN EIGHTEEN MILES distant.
2. **Nihil virtūte (133) mēlius est,** *nothing is better THAN VIRTUE.*
3. **Cīves mei sint (134) beāti,** *MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.*
4. **Amēmus (134) pātriam,** *LET US LOVE our country.*
5. **Vēniat (134),** *LET HIM COME.*
6. **Nē hōdie prōficiscāmur (134),** *LET US not SET OUT to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mēlius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem
essē terrā. 3. Amīcītia, quā¹ nīhil mēlius hābēmus, nōbis² ā
dis³ immortalibus dāta est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle.
5. Milītes fortiōres sunt impērātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppīdo
nōn amplius milibus passuum duōbus castra pōsuit. 7. Ab urbe
nōn amplius milibus passuum quinquē castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse
āb hostium castris nōn longius mille⁵ ēt quingentis passibus
ābērat. 9. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo
ēt cōpiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milibus passuum octōdēcim
ābērat, rēi frūmentāriae prospīciendum⁶ existīmāvit.⁷ Iter⁸ āb
Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Milītes vēniant.
11. Sītis⁹ beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interfīciāmus. 13. Cae-
sārem dē ējus adventu certiōrem faciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte
dē quarta vīgīlia nē prōficiscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fīat
dē meo consīlio. 16. Iter cēlērīus pēr Galliam faciāmus.
17. Cīvītātī¹⁰ persuādeāmus ūt exeant.¹¹ 18. Nōvis rēbus nē
stūdeāmus. 19. Hostibus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis
dē injūriis, quas eōrum sōciis¹² intūlīmus, sātisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better
than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the gen-
eral. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 133.

² See 39.

³ See 20.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

⁵ Is **mille** in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See 108.

⁶ Sc. **essē**. See 130.

⁷ **rēi** — **existimāvit**, *he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*

⁸ Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly*.

⁹ See EXAMPLE 3.

¹⁰ See 132.

¹¹ See LN. LXXI., NOTE 20.

¹² See 67.

¹³ See LN. LXXI., Example 4.



LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 283–286 : A. & S. 524–526 : B. 61 ; 311, RULE LXX. : B. & M. 1163 ; 1164 : G. 216 ; 510 : H. 198 ; 490–493 : C. 234.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 317, REMARK : A. & S. 482 : B. 295, RULE LVIII. ; 299, RULE LXI. : B. & M. 1205 ; 1207 : G. 543–546 ; 632 : H. 497, I., II. : C. 206. This answers such questions as *For what purpose?* *With what design?* *With what aim?* *To what end?* *Why?* *What?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnit	} ut vīdeat,	he comes	} TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.
2. Vēniet		he will come	
3. Vēnit		he has come	
4. Vēnērit		he will have come	

- | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 5. Vēniēbat | } ūt vīdēret, | he was coming | } TO SEE, IN ORDER | |
| 6. Vēnit | | he came | | } TO SEE, THAT HE |
| 7. Vēnērat | | he had come | | |
8. Ut consēqui posset pontem fēcit, he made a bridge THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE to pursue.
9. Postulāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret, he demanded THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON the Aedui.
10. Equitātum qui sustinēret impētum mīsīt, he sent cavalry TO WITHSTAND the attack.
11. Nē offendēret vērēbātur, he was fearing THAT he should offend.
12. Ut socii venīrent vērēbātur, he was fearing THAT the allies would NOT come.

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent.
 2. Caesar Dumnorigem monet, ut in reliquum tempus¹ suspensiones vitet. 3. Nam, ne ejus supplicio² Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur. 4. Dumnorigi persuasit ut idem³ conareretur. 5. Copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. 6. Legatos ad eum mittunt qui dicant agros consuli⁴ vastandos esse.⁵ 7. Postulavit ne aut Aeduis⁶ aut eorum sociis⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nonnulli pudore adducti,⁷ ut timoris suspensionem vitarent, remanebant. 9. Caesar omnium ex conspectu remotis equis,⁸ ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus⁹ suos¹⁰ proelium commisit. 10. Caesar ad Ariovistum legatos misit, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem¹¹ locum medium utriusque¹² colloquio¹³ diceret. 11. Castella communit, quo¹⁴ facilius, si se invito¹⁵ transire conarentur, prohibere possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise

him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in *reliquum tempus*, *in the future*; lit., *into the remaining time*.

² See 79.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would *idem* be made?

⁴ See 131.

⁵ See 130 and 62.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.

⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES.

⁹ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹¹ How declined? See 116, *a*.

¹² *mēdium utriusque*, *midway between both*; *uterque* is declined like *uter*. (24)

¹³ See 39.

¹⁴ *quo* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.

¹⁵ *se invito*, *against his will*; see 122; lit., *he unwilling*.

¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231: A. & S. 384: B. 243, RULE XXXI.: B. & M. 821: G. 349: H. 387: C. 156.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, *a*: A. & S. 385; 386: B. 246, RULE XXXIV.: B. & M. 848: G. 350: H. 390, I., II.: C. 161.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Est mīhi (137) dōmi pāter, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.**
2. **Sex vīro (137) filii fuērunt, A MAN had six sons.**
3. **Haec mīhi (138) sunt cūrae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.**
4. **Tertiam āciem nostris subsidio mīsīt, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).**
5. **Nōvissimis praesidio ērant, they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīhi est āmicus; tībi sunt plūrīmi āmicī. 2. Magni pēdes sunt meo fratri sēd cāput parvum. 3. Erit consūli magnus exercitus. 4. Impērātōri fuērunt milītes multi ēt¹ fortes. 5. Virtus est vīro hōnōri. 6. Dixit haec sībi essē cūrae. 7. Quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlīquit. 8. Lēgātō² impērāvit ūt quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlinquēret.³ 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Nām ēquītātui,⁴ quem⁵ auxilio Caesāri Aedui mīsērant, Dumnōrix praecerat. 11. Gallis magno ād pugnam⁶ ērat⁷ impēdimento, quōd nōn sātīs commōdē pugnāre pōtērant. 12. Boiī ēt Tulingi, qui hōmīnum milīb⁸ circitēr quindēcīm agmen hostium claudēbant ēt nōvissimis⁹ praesidio ērant, ex ītīnēre¹⁰ nostros circumvērē.¹¹ 13. His rēbus¹² cognītis Caesar Gallōrum ānimos verbis¹³ confirmāvit pollicītusquē est sībi eam rem cūrae fūtūram.¹⁴ 14. Ariovistus dixit āmicītiā pōpūli Rōmāni sībi ornāmento ēt praesidio nōn dētrimento essē¹⁵ ōportēre.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

² See 132.

³ Why is the Subjunctive used ? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (135)
What question does *ut* — *relinquēret* answer ? (136)

⁴ See 67.

⁵ *quem* ; why is the Masculine Singular used ? Why the Accusative ?

⁶ *ad pugnam*, in battle.

⁷ The subject of *erat* is the substantive clause *quod* — *pōtērant*.

⁸ Is *milibus* used as a noun or as an adjective ? (108) ; see also 54.

⁹ *nōvissimis*, to the hindmost ; lit., to the newest.

¹⁰ *ex itinēre*, on the march.

¹¹ What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural ?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 54.

¹⁴ Sc. *essē*.

¹⁵ See 129.

¹⁶ See 128 and Ex. 8.

¹⁷ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁸ See 136.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, *d* ; 332, *a* : A. & S. 483 ; 494, *a* ; 499 : B. 296, RULE LIX. ; 297, RULE LX. ; 301, RULE LXII. : B. & M. 1218–1220 : G. 553–558 : 551, 1, 2 : H. 500, I., II. ; 501, I., 1 ; 504 : C. 207 ; 208 ; 209 ; 223.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tantus tīmor exercitum occūpāvit ūt omnium mentes perturbāret,** *such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.*

2. **Dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē ūt nōn scīret,** *he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.*
3. **Fiēbat ūt mīnus lātē vāgārentur,** *it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*
4. **Rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn tēla conjicērent,** *they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Milītes nūmēro¹ tām multi ērant, ūt agmīni² nōvissīmo magno praesīdio² essent.³ 2. His rēbus⁴ fiēbat⁵ ūt ēt mīnus lātē vāgārentur ēt mīnus fācīle fīnītīmīs bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē, ūt nōn scīret bello⁶ Allobrōgum proxīmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxīlium nōn tūlisse. 4. Tantus sūbīto tīmor omnem exercītum occūpāvit, ūt nōn mēdiocrītēr omnium mentes⁷ anīmosquē perturbāret. 5. Mons autēm altissīmus impendēbat, ūt⁸ fācīle perpauci prōhībēre possent. 6. Divīco respondit: Itā⁹ Helvētios ā mājōrībūs suis institūtos essē,¹⁰ ūti obsīdes accīpēre, nōn dāre, consuērīnt.¹¹ 7. Ita dies¹² circītēr quīndēcīm īter fēcērunt, ūti intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmum¹³ sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autēm Ariovistus tantos sībi¹⁴ spīrītus, tantam arrōgantiam sumpsērat, ūt fērendus¹⁵ nōn vīdērētur. 9. Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn īn nostros tēla conjicērent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹³ 7. This man assumes¹⁹ such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁸ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 124. ² See 138.
³ Why the *Imperfect*? (135)
⁴ *his rēbus*, for these reasons; see 79.
⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat*? ⁶ See 111.
⁷ How do *mens* and *ānīmus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.
⁸ *ūt*, so that. ⁹ *ita* modifies *institūtos* *essē*.
¹⁰ *institūtos* *essē* is object of *rēspōdit*. (52)
¹¹ See A. & G. 128, *a*: A. & S. 228, *a*, *b*: B. 95, *d*: B. & M. 315: G. 151, 1: H. 235: C. 84; 7.
¹² See 93. ¹³ *primum*, sc. *agmen*; render *van*.
¹⁴ See 39.
¹⁵ *fērendus*, endurable; lit. (one) to be endured.
¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. ¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
¹⁸ See EXAMPLE 4. ¹⁹ to assume, *sibi sūmere*.



LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. 218: A. & S. 359: B. 234, RULE XXIII.: B. & M. 765: G. 373: H. 399: C. 136, 2.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. 214, *c*: A. & S. 357: B. 230, REM. 1: B. & M. 780: G. 365: H. 401: C. 135.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. 219: A. & S. 365: B. 235, RULE XXIV.: B. & M. 788: G. 375: H. 406, II.: C. 137, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Qui rēi (140) mīlītārīs pērītissīmus hābēbātur*, who was considered very skilful IN military SCIENCE.

2. **Bellandi (140) cūpīdi, desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.**
3. **Jūdicium impērātōris (141) est, the decision is THE GENERAL'S ; or, belongs TO THE GENERAL.**
4. **Gallia est pōpūli (141) Rōmāni, Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.**
5. **Rēmīniscātur pristīnae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him recollect THE former VALOR of the Helvetii.**
6. **Vētēris contūmēliae (142) oblivisci vult, he is willing to forget THE old INSULT.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pērītus¹ hābētur. 2. Lēgātus nītitur ūt belli pērītus fīat.² 3. Nītēbātur ūt rēi milītāris pērītissimus fīeret.³ 4. Publius Considius, qui rēi milītāris pērītissimus hābēbātur ēt⁵ in exercītu Luci Sullae ēt postea in Marci Crassi⁴ fuērat, cūm explōrātōribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tām impērītum esse rērum, ūt nōn scīret⁶ Aeduos auxilio⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni nōn ūsos esse.⁸ 6. Milītes hortābor, ūt glōriae sempēr memōres sint. 7. Nos mōnuīt ūt virtūtis sempēr mēmōres essēmus. 8. Qua dē causa⁹ hōmīnes bellandi¹⁰ cūpīdi magno dōlōre affīciēbantur. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnōrigem cūpīdum nōvārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summa belli¹¹ jūdīcium impērātōris esse¹² sē existīmāvisse.¹² 11. Nēquē jūdīcat Galliam pōtius esse Ariovisti quām pōpūli Rōmāni. 12. Milītum est fortītēr pugnāre ;¹³ impērātōris est impērāre. 13. Divīco Caesārem hortātur ūt rēmīniscātur ēt¹⁴ vētēris incommōdi pōpūli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar rēcentium injūriārum oblivisci nōn vult.¹⁵ 15. Omnis contūmēliae obliviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.
 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁶
 5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 64.² See 126 and 136.³ Why Imperfect? (135)⁴ in Marci Crassi, sc. exercitū; translate, in that of Marcus Crassus.⁵ et connects hābēbātur and fuērat.⁶ See 139 and Example 2.⁷ See 104.⁸ ūsos esse depends upon sciret.⁹ qua de causa, for this reason.¹⁰ bellandi is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.¹¹ de summa belli, concerning the general management of the war.¹² esse depends upon existimāvisse; existimāvisse upon dicunt.¹³ See 129.¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.¹⁵ See 125.¹⁶ See 140.¹⁷ See Ex. 3.¹⁸ See 142.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 304-308: A. & S. 476, a, b: B. 305, a, 1-3; 306, RULE LXVI.: B. & M. 1259-1268: G. 590; 591; 596-599: H. 506; 507, I.-III.: C. 215, 1, 2, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. Si vincit, laetatur, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.
2. Si vincet, laetabitur, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.
3. Si vicērit, laetabitur, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.

4. *Sī vincat, laetētur, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.*
5. *Sī vincēret, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*
6. *Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Sī pugnāt, vincit.* 2. *Sī pugnābit, vincet.* 3. *Sī pugnāverit, vincet.* 4. *Sī pugnet, vincat.* 5. *Sī pugnāret, vincēret.* 6. *Sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.* 7. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus¹ sātisfācient, cum iis pācem fāciam.* 8. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciam.* 9. *Caesar dīcit sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, sēsē cūm iis pācem esse factūrum.²* 10. *Sī quid³ vultis,¹⁰ rēvertīmīni.⁴* 11. *Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm Helvētīis faciet, īn eam partem ībunt¹¹ Helvētīi ūbī eos esse vōluēris.⁵* 12. *Sīn bello⁶ persēqui⁷ persēvērābis,⁸ rēmīniscēre⁴ ēt vētēris incommōdi⁹ pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētīōrum.* 13. *Sī vētēris contūmēliae oblivisci vellem,¹⁰ nūm¹² ētiām rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre⁷ possem?* 14. *Sī id fīet, prōvinciae¹³ pēricūlōsum ērit.* 15. *Caesar dīcit sī nēmo¹⁴ sēquātur, sē cūm sōla dēcīma lēgiōne ītūrum essē.¹¹*

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,³ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁵ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 132. ² *essē factūrum = factūrum essē.*
³ See 116 and Ex. 6. ⁴ See 47.
⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
⁶ See 54. ⁷ See 69.
⁸ *persēqui persēvēro, I persist in pursuing.*
⁹ See 142. ¹⁰ See 125.
¹¹ See 126.
¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
¹³ See 86.
¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of *nēmo* are rare: these cases are supplied by *nullius* and *nullo* (from *nullus*, 24).
¹⁵ See 134.



LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference.

A. & G. 250: A. & S. 415: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 929: G. 400: H. 423: C. 176.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 411: B. 263, RULE XLVIII.: B. & M. 888: G. 402: H. 419, II.: C. 175. This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Altērum ĭter multo (144) expēditius ērat, the other route was MUCH more passable.*
2. *Mātūrius paulo (144) dōmum contendit, he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.*
3. *Ipsūm Dumnōrīgem, summā audāciā (144, a), Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.*
4. *Summa hūmānitāte (144, a) ādōlescens, a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grāvius quēritūr.¹ 2. Multo māior ālacritas exercītui² injecta est. 3. Altērum īter pār prōvinciam nostram ērat, multo fācīlius atquē expēdītius, proptēreā quōd intēr fīnes Helvētiōrum ēt Allobrōgum, qui nūpēr pācāti ērant, Rhōdānus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte³ duōbus maxīmis bellis⁴ confectis mātūrius paulo, quām tempus anni postulābat, īn hīberna īn⁵ Sēquānos exercītum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus mortem nīhīlo mīnus Helvētii id, quōd constituērant,⁶ fācēre cōnantur, ūt ē fīnībus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Rēlīquum spātium mons contīnet magnā altītūdīne, ītā, ūt rādīces⁸ montis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūmīnis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingenti magnītūdīne corpōrum Germānos,¹² incrdībīli virtūte atquē exercītatiōne īn armis essē¹³ praedicābant. 8. Commōdissī-mum vīsum est¹⁴ Cāium Vālērīum Procillum, summā virtūte ēt hūmānītāte ādōlescentem, ād eum mittēre. 9. Rēpērit ipsum esse Dumnōrīgem, summā audāciā, magnā āpūd plēbem proptēr libērālītātem grātiā, cūpīdum¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ nōvārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

- ¹ See 103. ² See 67.
³ See 111. ⁴ See 122.
⁵ in, among. ⁶ constituērant, sc. facere.
⁷ ūt — exeant is an appositive to id ; for the mood, see 139 ; translate,
to go forth.
⁸ See 34. ⁹ ex utrāque parte, on each side.
¹⁰ See 32. ¹¹ See 139.
¹² See 53. ¹³ See 52.
¹⁴ What is the subject of visum est ? (129)
¹⁵ See 64. ¹⁶ See 140.



LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 313, a-e: A. & S. 478-480; 510 (2): B. 292, e, RULE LVI.; 303, d, RULE LXIV.: B. & M. 1281-1284: G. 605-609: H. 514; 515, I.-III.: C. 204, 1, 2; 214, 3; 225.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quūm pugnātum sit, *although they fought; lit., it was fought.*
2. Licet victoriā glōriētur, *although he glories in victory.*
3. Quamvis cāreret nōmine, *although he was without the name.*
4. Etsi vidēbat, tāmēn nōn pūtābat, *although he saw, yet he did not think.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quūm fortit̃r pugnent, tāmēn nōn vincent. 2. Quūm Sēquāni Rōmānis¹ sātisfēcērint, tāmēn lēgātus pācem cūm iis nōn fācit. 3. Quūm ea² it̃a sint, tāmēn, sī obsīdes āb iis sibi dentur,³ cūm iis pācem fāciat.³ 4. Nām hoc tōto proelio,⁴ quūm āb hōra septīma ād vesp̃erum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vidēre nēmo pōtuit. 5. Licet⁶ me hortētur, nōn pugnābo. 6. Licet mīles vulnērātus sit, tāmēn laetātur. 7. Lī-

cet Helvētii sua victōria⁷ glōrientur, tāmēn ĭter faciēnt nōn pēr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitāte⁸ rēgia, quamvīs cārēret nōmīne.⁹ 9. Quamvīs sint sūb āqua, sūb āqua mālēdicēre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prōpē exacta jām aestas ērat, tāmēn eō¹⁰ exercĭtum adduxit. 11. Nām etsī sinē ullō pērīcūlo lēgiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cūm ēquītātu proelium fōre¹² vīdēbat, tāmēn committendum¹³ nōn pūtābat. 12. Itā dies circĭtēr quindēcīm ĭter fēcērunt, ūtī intēr nōvissĭmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prĭmum nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis mīlibus¹⁵ passuum intēresset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them.
3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset.
4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸
5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone.
6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.

² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

³ See LN. LXXVII., EX. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)

⁴ See 111.

⁵ See EX. 1.

⁶ *licēt* is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with *ūt* (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive*. (135) What is the literal translation?

⁷ See 79.

⁸ See 144, a.

⁹ See EX. 3.

¹⁰ *eō*, *thither*.

¹¹ A. & G. 217: A. & S. 353 (2): B. 233, RULE XXII.: B. & M. 746: G. 361, 2: H. 396, III.: C. 133, 3.

¹² *fōre* = *fūtūrum essē*. (62)

¹³ *committendum*, sc. *essē*; see 130.

¹⁴ *quinis*, etc., *than five*, etc. *each day*.

¹⁵ See 133.

¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252: A. & S. 408: B. 258, RULE XLIII., c: B. & M. 884: G. 404: H. 422: C. 179. This answers such questions as *For how much?* *At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, b: A. & S. 423, b: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 958: G. 335, REMARK 1: H. 379, 2: C. 176. This answers the question *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, a: A. & S. 418: B. 261, RULE XLVI., a: B. & M. 919: G. 373, REMARKS 1-4: H. 421, III.: C. 179, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dōmum duōbus tālentis (146) ēmit, he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. Oppidum parvo pretio (146) vendidit, he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. Milibus (147) passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
4. Dignus est mājōribus (148), he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puēros ēt puellas dōcet. 2. Vīgintī tālentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrātes vendidit. 3. Vendidit hic auro patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis² multo sanguīne stētit.³ 5. Vēreor nē victōria iis multo sanguīne stet.⁴ 6. Quūm Rōmāni vīcērint,⁵ tāmēn victōria iis multo sanguīne stētit. 7. Septīmo die āb explōrātōrībūs certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti cōpias⁷ ā nostris⁸ milībūs passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī ābesse.⁹ 8. Hic lōcus aequo fērē spātio āb castris Ariovisti ēt Caesāris āberat. 9. Lēgiōnem Caesar, quām ēquis¹⁰ dēvēxerat, passibus dūcentis āb eo tūmūlo constituit. 10. Itēm ēquītes

Ariovisti pări intervallo constītērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem die castra prēmōvit ēt mīlībūs passuum sex ā Caesāris castris sūb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrībūs indigni sunt. 13. Hic impērātor immortalitāte dignus est. 14. Lācēt¹² hī mīlītes fortissīmi sint, tāmēn mājōrībūs indigni sunt. 15. Puērum hortēmur ūt mājōrībūs dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est āb iis audīta pōpūli Rōmāni mājestāte ēt sūpērīōrībūs victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under stō.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. cōpiis.

⁹ ābessē depends upon the idea of saying contained in ab — factus est, *he was informed by scouts that*, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ ēquis, *on horseback*; see 54.

¹¹ See consistō, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, *a, b, c*; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) *b*; 510 (2); 519: B. 302, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. 1250; 1251; 1255: G. 538-541; 587; 636: H. 516, I, II.; 517: C. 214, 3; 224; 232.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quūm impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē in montem rēcēpērunt,** *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. **Caesar injūriam faciēbat qui vectīgālia dētēriōra făcēret,** *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. **Aedui questi sunt quōd Harūdes fines eōrum pōpūlārentur,** *the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. **Quōd ā Bibracte ābērat, rei frūmentāriae prospīciendum existīmāvit,** *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfācile est, quūm virtūte¹ omnībus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae impērio² pōtīri.³ 2. Orgētōrix dixit perfācile essē, quūm virtūte omnībus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtīri. 3. Quūm magna ex parte⁴ eōrum prēcībus⁵ adductus bellum suscepērit, quērītur. 4. Caesāri quūm id nunciātum esset, mātūrat āb urbe prōfīcisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ quūm nostrōrum⁷ impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē, ūt coepērant,⁸ in montem rēcēpērunt, altēri ād impēdimenta ēt carros suos sē contūlērunt. 6. In fines Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt quūm propter vulnēra mīlītum nostri trīduum mōrāti eos sēqui nōn pōtuisent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesārem

injūriam facēre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētēriōra⁹ facēret. 8. Grāvītēr eos accūsāt quōd āb iis nōn sublēvētur. 9. Multo¹⁰ ētiām grāvius quōd sit destitūtus quērītur. 10. Proptēr frīgōra, quōd Gallia sūb septemtriōnībus pōsita est,¹¹ frūmenta īn agris mātūra nōn ērant. 11. Eo autēm frūmento,² quōd¹² flūmīne Arāre nāvībus¹³ subvēxerat, proptēreā mīnus ūti¹⁴ pōtērat, quōd īter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant, ā quībus discēdēre nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo ēt copiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milībus¹⁶ passuum octōdēcim ābērat, rei frūmentāriae prospīciendum¹⁷ existīmavit: īter āb Helvētīis āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.

² See 104.

³ See 129.

⁴ magna ex parte, in great part.

⁵ See 79.

⁶ Diūtius modifies sustinēre.

⁷ The Possessive Pronouns, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁸ What kind of a verb is coepērant? (127)

⁹ See EXAMPLE 2.

¹⁰ See 144.

¹¹ Of what does *quōd — pōsita est* express the cause?

¹² See **115** and **34**.

¹³ See **54**.

¹⁴ See **69**.

¹⁵ See **125**.

¹⁶ See **133**.

¹⁷ See **EXAMPLE 4**.

¹⁸ See **105**.

¹⁹ *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*

²⁰ See **146**.

²¹ See **111**.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. **323; 325; 327; 328**: A. & S. **502; 503; 505; 509, a**: B. **292, d, 1-3**, RULE LVI.; **304, 1-3**, RULE LXV.: B. & M. **1237; 1238; 1241; 1244**: G. **570; 571; 574; 576; 579; 580; 581**: H. **519, I, II, 1, 2; 520, I, 1, 2, II.; 521, I, II, 1, 2**: C. **214, 1, 2, 4, 5**.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quūm lēgāti mittērentur, Ariovistus postūlāvit,** *when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
- 2. Priusquā quidquā cōnārētur Divitiācum vōcat,**¹ *before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
- 3. Dūm haec gēruntur Caesāri nunciātum est,** *while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
- 4. Nōn exspectandum sibi stātuit dūm pervēnīrent,** *he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Diū quūm esset pugnātum, impēdimentis castrisque² nostri³ pōtiti sunt. 2. Quūm trīdūi viam⁴ prōcessisset, nunciātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cū suis omnibus cōpiis contendere. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus, quūm dōmo⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā,⁷ Lucium Cassium consūlem interfēcērat ēt ejus exercitum sūb jūgum mīserat. 4. Quūm²⁰ hostium ācies ā sinistro cornu⁸ pulsā⁹ atquē in fūgam conversa esset, ā dextro

cornu vēhementēr multītūdīne suōrum³ nostram āciem prēmēbant. 5. Itāquē priusquam quidquām cōnārētur Divitiācum ād sē vōcāri jūbet.¹ 6. Postquām īd ānīmum advertit cōpias suas Caesar īn proxīmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquām Caesar pervēnit obsīdes, arma, servos¹⁰ pōposcit. 8. Dūm haec īn collōquio gēruntur,¹¹ Caesāri nunciātum est⁵ ēquītes Ariovisti lāpīdes tēlāquē¹² īn nostros conjicēre. 9. Tāmēn, ūt spātium intercēdere posset, dūm milītes, quos¹³ impērāvērat, convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ād dēlibērandum¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quībus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum¹⁷ sibi stātuit, dūm, omnībus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum consumptis, īn Santōnos Helvētii pervēnīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹ 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 276, d: A. & S. 466: B. 58: B. & M. 1082: G. 220: H. 467, III.: C. 189, 6.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of *nunciātum est*? (129)

⁶ See 107.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ a sinistro cornu, on the left wing. ⁹ pulsa, sc. esset.

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsides, arma, servos* ; or *obsides et arma et servos* ; NOT *obsides, arma et servos*.

¹¹ A. & G. 276, c: A. & S. 468: G. 220, REMARK: H. 467, 4: C. 214, 1, note 2.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *tēlāque*.

¹³ Sc. *convenire*.

¹⁴ *ad delibērandum, for deliberating.*

¹⁵ *sumptūrum, sc. essē.*

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quae res, THESE affairs.*

¹⁷ *expectandum, sc. essē.* See 130 and 131

¹⁸ See 122.

¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

²⁰ See 145.



LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding NOTE: A. & S. 518: B. 294, a, RULE LVII.: B. & M. 1182: G. 454; 469: H. 528, 2 NOTE; 529, I.: C. 231, 1 w. n. 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid sui consīli¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.*
2. *Causa quae esset quaesiit, he asked what the cause was.*
3. *Ariovisto mīrum vīsum est quid in Gallia Caesāri nēgōti¹ esset, Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Quālis esset nātūra montis, qui² cognoscērent,³ mīsit.*
2. *Dīcit intelligēre sēsē quanto id cūm pēricūlo fēcērit.*
3. *Ex quo jūdīcārī pōtest,⁴ quantum hābeat in sē bōni¹ constantia.*
4. *Dumnōrīgi custōdes pōnit,⁵ ūt, quae āgat, quībuscūm⁶ lōquātur, scīre possit.*
5. *Ariovistus dixit sibi mīrum vīdērī,⁷ quid in sua Gallia, quā bello⁸ vīcisset,⁹ aut Caesāri¹⁰*

aut omnino pōpulo Rōmāno¹⁰ nēgōti¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pēr fines Aeduōrum ēt Sēquānōrum īn Rhōdānum influit incrēdībili lēnītātē, ītā ūt oculis, īn utram partem¹¹ fluat, jūdīcārī nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lōco mōvent. Idēm¹² fācit Caesar, ēquītātumquē omnem, ād nūmērū quat-tuor mīlium, quem ex omni prōvincia ēt Aeduis atquē eōrum sōciis coactum hābēbat,¹³ praemittit, qui vīdeant,³ quas īn partes hostes īter fāciant. 8. Caesar vēhēmētēr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quām īn partem aut quo consīlio¹⁴ dūcērentur,¹⁵ sibi quaerendum¹⁶ aut cōgītandum pūtārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vīgīlia sē castra mōtūrum, ūt quām prīmum intellī-gēre posset, utrūm āpūd eos pūdor atquē officiū, ān tīmor vālērēt. 10. Quūm ex captivis quaerēret Caesar, quām ōb rem Ariovistus proelio⁸ nōn dēcrtāret, hanc īpēriēbat cau-sam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain³ in what direction the river flows. 3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows. 4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *quid sui consīli*, *what his plan* ; lit., *what of his plan*. See A. & G. 216 : A. & S. 354 : B. 227, RULE XVII. : B. & M. 77 : G. 366 ; 371 : H. 396, IV. : C. 133, 4.

² **qui**, sc. **vīros** as antecedent.

³ See **136** and Ex. 10.

⁴ What is the subject of **pōtest**?

⁵ **Dumnōrīgi** — **pōnit**, he *places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix*.

⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.

⁷ **sibi** — **vīdēri**, he *wondered*; lit., *it seemed to him wonderful*; for **sibi**, see **39**.

⁸ **bello**, in *war*; see **54**.

⁹ **vicisset**, translate by the Indicative.

¹⁰ See **137**.

¹¹ **in utram partem**, in *which direction*.

¹² How does **īdem** differ in meaning from **īdem**?

¹³ **coactum hābēbat**, he *had collected*. A. & G. **292**, c: A. & S. **547** c: B. & M. **1358**: G. **230**: H. **388**, 1, NOTE: C. **251**, 3.

¹⁴ See **79**.

¹⁵ **dūcērentur**, they *were to be led*.

¹⁶ **quaerendum**, sc. **essē**: see **130**.

¹⁷ See **149** and Ex. 3.



LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. **335**, REM.; **336**; **339**: A. & S. **515**; **516**: B. **316**; **317**, RULE LXXIV.: B. & M. **1295**; **1296**: G. **651**–**653**: H. **522**; **523**, I., II., 1, 2, III.; **524**: C. **228**; **229**.

EXAMPLE.

Orātiō Recta, *Direct Discourse*.

Ob eam
rem ex cīvītātē prōfūgi ēt
Rōmam vēnī, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdīb
tēnēbar.

I fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because **I** was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Orātiō Oblīqua, *Indirect Discourse*.

Lōcūtus est Divitiācus: ōb eam
rem **sē** ex cīvītātē prōfūgisse ēt
Rōmam vēnisse, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdīb
tēnērētur.

Divitiacus said: **he** fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because **he** was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divīco respondit: Itā Helvētios ā mājōrībus suis instītūtos esse, ūtī obsīdes accīpēre,¹ nōn dāre consuērīnt²; ējus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum essē testem. 2. Lēgāti dixērunt sēsē hābēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu āb eo pētēre vellent. 3. Lōcūtus est prō his Divitiācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnes essē duas: hārum³ altērius⁴ princīpātum tēnēre Aeduos, altērius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum³ prīmo circītēr milia quīndēcīm Rhēnum transisse: postēāquām agros ēt cultum ēt cōpias⁵ Gallōrum hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri ādāmas-sent, trāductos⁶ plūres:¹¹ nunc essē īn Gallia ād centūm ēt vīgīntī mīlium nūmērūm. 5. Dixit cūm his Aeduos eōrumquē clientes sēmēl atquē ītērūm armīs⁷ contendisse; magnam cālāmītātem pulsos⁸ accēpisse, omnem nōbīlītātem, omnem sēnātum, omnem ēquītātūm⁹ āmīsisse. 6. Anīmadvertit Cāesar ūnos ex omnībus Sēquānos nīhīl eārum rērūm³ fācēre, quas cētēri fācērent, sēd tristes cāpīte¹⁰ dēmīssō terram īntuēri.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ *altērius* modifies *factiōnis* understood.⁵ *cōpias*, *wealth*.⁷ See 54.⁹ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹¹ *plus* is declined as follows:⁶ *trāductos*, sc. *essē*.⁸ See *pello*.¹⁰ See 122.

	<i>N.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> plūs,
	<i>Gen.</i> plūris,
	<i>Dat.</i> _____
	<i>Acc.</i> plūs,
	<i>Abl.</i> _____

	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
PLUR.	plūres,	plūra,
	plūrium,	plūrium,
	plūrībus,	plūrībus,
	plūres,	plūra,
	plūrībus,	plūrībus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Sī
pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm
Helvētiis faciēt, in eam partem
ibunt atquē ibi **erunt** Helvē-
tii, ūbi eos **tu** constitu-
eris atquē esse vōlueris; sīn
bello persēqui persēvērābis, rē-
mīniscēre ēt vētēris incom-
mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people
shall make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go
into that part and stay where
you shall have determined and
wished that they should be;
but if **you shall** persist in
continuing war, recollect the
old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is itā cūm Caesāre ēgit: Sī
pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm
Helvētiis faciēret, in eam partem
itūros atquē ibi **fūtāros** Helvē-
tios, ūbi eos **Caesar** constitu-
isset atquē esse vōluisset; sīn
bello persēqui persēvērāret, rē-
mīniscēretur ēt vētēris incom-
mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

*He treated with Caesar as fol-
lows:* If the Roman people
should make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go
into that part and stay where
Caesar should have determined
and wished that they should be;
but if **he should** persist in con-
tinuing war, **let him** recollect
the old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedicāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē
nōn suā sponte,² sēd rōgātum³ ēt arcessītum³ ā Gallis; nōn
sīnē magna spe magnisquē praemiis dōmum prōpinquosquē
rēliquisse: sēdes hābēre⁴ in Gallia āb ipsis⁵ concessas,⁶ obsīdes
ipsōrum⁶ vōluntāte² dātos; stipendium cāpēre⁴ jūre⁷ belli,

quod⁸ victōres victis⁹ impōnere consuērint.¹⁰ 2. His Caesar itā respondit : Eo¹¹ sibi mīnūs dūbītātiōnis¹² dāri, quōd eas res, quas lēgāti Helvētii commēmōrassent,¹⁰ mēmōriā²¹ tēnēret, atquē eo¹³ grāvius ferre, quo¹³ mīnūs mērīto⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni accīdissent : qui si¹⁴ alcūjus injūriā¹⁵ sibi¹⁶ conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse diffīcile cāvēre¹⁷ ; sed eo¹¹ dēceptum,¹⁸ quod nēque commissum¹⁹ a se intellīgēret, quāre tīmēret, nēque sīne causa tīmendum²⁰ pūtāret.

Notes.

¹ A. & G. 188 : A. & S. 438 (3) : B. 269 : B. & M. 658 : G. 195,
REMARK 2 : H. 441 : C. 113, 7.

² See 79.

³ See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

⁴ hābere, capere, sc. sē.

⁵ ipsis, sc. Gallis.

⁶ concessas, from concēdo ; ipsōrum, *their own*.

⁷ The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which anything is done : jūre, *in accordance with the law*.

⁸ See 115.

⁹ A. & G. 188 : A. & S. 438 (2) : B. 269 : B. & M. 658 : G. 195,
REMARK 1 : H. 441, 1 ; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns :
C. 251, 8. For the case of victis, see 67.

¹⁰ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

¹¹ eo, *for this reason*.

¹² See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

¹³ See GEN. VY. under eo.

¹⁴ qui si, *if they*.

¹⁵ See 140.

¹⁶ See 86 ; translate, *on their part*.

¹⁷ See 129.

¹⁸ dēceptum, sc. essē sē.

¹⁹ commissum, sc. essē aliquid.

²⁰ tīmendum, sc. sibi essē, and see 130.

²¹ See 54.



LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies : The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things) : (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani ; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards ; we have among the Helvētīi large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent ;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind ; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.⁹ *for this reason, eo.*¹⁰ *that, quōd.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*¹² See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 295 : A. & S. 548 (1) : B. 324 : B. & M. 1319 ; 1321 : G. 426 ; 427 : H. 541 ; 542, I. - IV. : C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. Hostībus pugnandi pōtestātem fēcīt, *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.

2. **Bellandi cūpīdi**, *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Diem ād dēlibērandum sūmet**, *he will take a day for* DELIBERATING.
4. **Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo**, *he found on* INQUIRING.
5. **Stūdium pugnandi**, *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.¹

1. Qua dē causa hōmīnes bellandi² cūpīdi magno dōlōre³ afficiēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti ēt auctōritāte Orgētōrīgis permōti, constituērunt ea, quae ād prōficiendum pertīnērent,⁴ comparāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ād dēlibērandum sumptūrum.⁵ 4. Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo Caesar īnitium ējus fūgae factum⁵ ā Dumnōrīge atquē ējus ēquītibus. 5. Caesar Divitiācum consōlātus rōgat, finem ōrandi fāciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, quū nēquē āditum nēquē causam postūlandi justam hābēret,⁷ libērālītate⁸ sēnātus ea praemia consēcūtus est. 7. Caesar lōquendi finem fācit sēquē ād suos⁹ rēcīpit, suisquē impērāvit nē quod¹⁰ omnīno tēlum īn hostes rējicērent. 8. Multo¹¹ māior ālacritas stūdiumquē pugnandi mājus exercitui injectum est. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar āciem instruxit hostibusquē¹² pugnandi pōtestātem fēcīt.¹³ 10. Itā nostri⁹ acritēr īn hostes signo¹⁴ dāto impētum fēcērunt, ūt spātium pīla īn hostes conjīciendi nōn dārētur.¹⁵

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war. 2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. 3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶ 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them. 6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns.

² See 140.

³ A. & G. 248, R. : A. & S. 410 (2) : B. 259, RULE XLIV. : B. & M. 873 : G. 401 : H. 419, III. : C. 166, 1.

⁴ A. & G. 320 : A. & S. 500 (2), (d) : B. 301 : B. & M. 1218 : G. 633 : H. 500, I. : C. 223, 1.

⁵ *essē* is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3 ; *ūt*, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See 145.

⁸ See 79.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹⁰ See 116, *second part*.

¹¹ See 144.

¹² See 39.

¹³ See EXAMPLE I.

¹⁴ See 122 and Ex. 2, *b*.

¹⁵ See 139.

¹⁶ *all of us, omnibus nobis* ; see 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. 296 : A. & S. 548 (2) ; 550 : B. 325, RULE LXXVI. : B. & M. 1322 : G. 428 : H. 543 : C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ad mīnuendam grātiam*, for DIMINISHING popularity.
2. *Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētōrix dēlīgītur*, *Orgetorix* is chosen to EXECUTE these plans.
3. *Spem regni obtīnendi*, the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty.
4. *Dātā facultāte itīnēris faciendi*, if an opportunity for marching should be granted.

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quibus opibus¹ ac nervis non solum ad minuendam² gratiam,³ sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur.⁴ 2. Ipse in citiorem Galliam ad conventus agendas profectus est. 3. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. 4. In Gallia ab his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, regna occupabantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important. 6. Decima legio se esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venire. 8. Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant,⁵ comburunt, ut domum⁶ reditionis spe⁷ sublata⁸ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent. 9. Liscus dicit si quid accidat⁹ Romanis, summam in spem¹⁰ per Helvetios regni obtinendi Dumnorigem venire. 10. Hac oratione habita¹¹ summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est. 11. Neque homines inimico animo,¹² data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos¹³ ab injuria et maleficio existimavit. 12. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset,¹⁴ pontem in Arare faciendum curat¹⁵ atque ita exercitum traducit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city. 3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens⁹ to us. 5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See 104.

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ *grātiām*, sc. *suam*.

⁴ *ūtērētur*, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., EX. 2.

⁶ See 105; *dōmum* limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun *rēdditiōnis*.

⁷ See 122.

⁸ From *tollo*.

⁹ *accīdat*, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (152)

¹⁰ *in spem vēnio*, *I entertain the hope*.

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See 144, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See 136.

¹⁵ *pontem* — *curat*, *he attends to building a bridge over the Saône*; lit., *he cares for a bridge to be built*, etc. How is *Saône* pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.



LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. 302; 303: A. & S. 554 (2); 555: B. 326, RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. 1360; 1365: G. 435-437: H. 546-547: C. 253; 254.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lēgātos mittunt rōgātūm auxīlium*, *they send legates TO ASK FOR aid*.
2. *Perfācīle factū*, *very easy TO DO*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quū sē suāquē¹ āb iis dēfendēre nōn possent,² lēgātos ād Caesārem mittunt rōgātūm auxiliū. 2. Bello Helvētiōrum confecto tōtius fērē Galliae lēgāti, principes³ cīvītātum, ād Caesārem grātulātūm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti āb Aeduis ēt ā Trēvīris vēniēbant; Aedui⁴ questūm quōd Harūdes, qui nūpēr īn Galliam transportāti essent,⁵ fīnes eōrum pōpūlārentur²; sēsē nē obsīdībūs quīdēm dātis pācem Ariovisti rēdīmēre pōtuisse. 4. Divitiācus dixit ōb eam rem sē ex cīvītātē prōfūgisē ēt Rōmam⁶ ād sēnātūm vēnisē auxiliū postulātūm, quōd sōlus nēquē jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdībūs tēnērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnōrīgēm ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābēre, sōrōrem ex matre⁷ ēt prōpinquas suas nuptūm īn ālias cīvītātes collōcasse. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invīta⁹ quae ād vīrum nuptūm dātur. 7. Perfācile factū essē illis prōbat cōnāta perfīcēre, proptēreā quōd ipse suae cīvītātis impērium obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops. 2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid. 3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 19, c: A. & S. 35: B. 24, Exc. 3: B. & M. 21: G. 14, REMARK 1: H. 18, 2, 1): C. 11.

² See 149.

³ See 25.

⁴ Aedui, sc. vēniēbant.

⁵ See A. & G. 342: A. & S. 523: B. 310, RULE LXIX.: B. & M. 1291: G. 666: H. 529, II.: C. 226.

⁶ See 105.

⁷ sörōrem ex matre, *his half-sister*. ⁸ See 64.

⁹ invita, *against her will*; it modifies quae.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and 149.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See 155.

¹³ See 122.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, 376, *a-d*: A. & S. 660 (1)–(4), *a, b*, NOTES 1, 2, (5), *a*: B. 374, *a-c*: B. & M. 1524–1537: G. APPENDIX, page 387: H. 641–645: C. 313.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 80, *a-d*: A. & S. 666, *d*; B. 373: B. & M. 1538–1542: H. 649–650: C. 317, 1.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuāriūs, ā, ūm, (Jān.)	<i>of January.</i>
Februāriūs, ā, ūm, (Febr.)	<i>of February.</i>
Martiūs, ā, ūm, (Mart.)	<i>of March.</i>
Aprīlis, ě, (Apr.)	<i>of April.</i>
Māiūs, ā, ūm, (Māi.)	<i>of May.</i>
Jūniūs, ā, ūm, (Jūn.)	<i>of June.</i>
Quintīlis, ě, (Quint.)	<i>of July.</i>
Sextīlis, ě, (Sext.)	<i>of August.</i>
Septembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Sept.)	<i>of September.</i>
Octōbĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Oct.)	<i>of October.</i>
Nōvembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Nōv.)	<i>of November.</i>
Dĕcembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Dĕc.)	<i>of December.</i>

Kālendae, ārūm, (Kāl.) f. pl.,	<i>Calends</i> ; the first day of the Roman month.
Nōnae, ārūm, (Nōn.) f. pl.	<i>Nones</i> ; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.
Idūs, uūm, (Id.) f. pl.,	<i>Ides</i> ; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.
prīdiē, (pr. or prīd.) adv.,	<i>the day before.</i>

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gēnāvam Kālendis¹ ipsis Nōvembris² occūpābit.
 2. Qui dies ērit a. d. VI. Kāl. Nōv.³ (antē diem sextum Kā-
 lendas Nōvembres). 3. C.⁴ Jūlius Caesar Idibus Martiis
 occīsus est. 4. M. Tullius Cīcēro a. d. III. Nōn. Jān. nātus
 est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kāl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap.
 Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. īn sēnātu lōcūtus est. 7. Tī.
 Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā⁵ prōfectus est. 8. M. Mānilius
 ād Rōmam prōfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba
 ōrātōres faciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prīd.
 Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit. 11. Dixi ēgo īn sēnātu caedem tē
 contūlissee⁷ princīpum īn a. d. V. Kāl. Nōv. 12. Caedem
 princīpum contūlisti ex a. d. V. Kāl. Dēc. ād pr. Kāl.⁶ Jān.
 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.⁶ Sept. hostes sūpērāvit. 14. Is
 dies ērat a. d. V. Kāl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Gābīnio consūlībus.⁸
 15. Sī quid vellent, ād Id. Apr. rēvertērentur. 16. Hōrum
 est nēmo qui nesciat⁹ tē prīd. Kāl.⁶ Jān. stētisse īn cōmītio
 cūm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Mar-
 cus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Gaius Gracchus was
 killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out
 from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See 111.² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

³ Such an expression as *antē diem sextum Kālendas Nōvembres* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ad*, as in sentences 11 and 12.

⁴ *Gāius*: Latin pronunciation, *Gáh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Gá-yus*.

⁵ See 107.

⁶ See A. & G. 261, *a*: A. & S. 660, *a*, NOTE 1: B. & M. 1010: H. 437, 1: C. 313, 3, *at end*.

⁷ From *confēro*.⁸ See 122.

⁹ A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, *a*: B. 301, 5: B. & M. 1218: G. 634: H. 503, 1: C. 223, 3.



LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *prīma lūce*, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.
2. *multo die*, late in the day.
3. *prīma nocte*, in the first part of the night.
4. *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.
5. *prīdiē ejūs diēi*, on the day before.
6. *postrīdiē ejūs diēi*, on the following day.

Translate and parse.

1. Prīma lūce,¹ quūm summus mons ā T. Lābiēno tēnērē-tur,² ipse āb hostium castris nōn longius mille ēt quingentis passibus³ abesset, Considius ēquo⁴ admissio ād eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lābiēno occūpārī vōluērit,⁵ āb hostibus tēnēri. 2. Multo dēnīquē die pēr explōrātōres Caesar cog-nōvit ēt montem ā suis tēnēri ēt Helvētios castra mōvisse ēt Considium tīmōre perterrītum, quōd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sibi rēnunciassē.⁶ 3. Cīrcītēr hōmīnum⁷ mīlia sex prīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ād Rhēnum fīnesquē Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctēm ētiām ād impēdīmenta pugnātum est, proptēreā quōd prō vallo carros objēcērant. 5. Collōquendi⁸ Caesāri causā vīsa nōn est, ēt eo⁹ māgīs, quōd prīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant, quīn¹¹ īn nostros tēla conjicērent.¹¹ 6. Postrīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ praetēr castra Caesāris suas cōpias trādūxit ēt mīlīb¹² passuum duō-bus ultrā eum castra fēcīt. 7. Postrīdiē ejus diēi Caesar praesīdium utrisque castris, quōd sātīs essē vīsum est, rēli-quit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is the literal meaning of **prima luce**? Why is the Ablative used?
- ² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5.
- ³ See 133.
- ⁴ See 122; what is the literal meaning of **ęquo admissio**?
- ⁵ What mood is **vęluerit**? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 152.
- ⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.
- ⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See 153.
- ⁹ **eo męgis**, *the more*; for **eo**, see 79.
- ¹⁰ See A. & G. 214, *g* on p. 208: A. & S. 355 *b*: B. & M. 1005: H. 398, 5: C. 133, 7, 1.
- ¹¹ **quęn** — **conjęęrent**, *from hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 319, *d*: A. & S. 493, (2): B. 297, RULE LX.: B. & M. 1218: G. 551: H. 504: C. 211.
- ¹² See 147.
- ¹³ *at full speed*, **ęquis admissis**; why the Plural?



LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **plūs posse**, *to be more powerful*.
2. **plūrimum posse**, *to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful*.
3. **ei grętias ँęęre**, *to thank him*.
4. **nębis est in ँnįmo ĩter fęcęre**, *we intend to march*.
5. **lęcęre ँperto**, *on the unprotected flank*.
6. **ex ęquis**, *on horseback*.
7. **męmęrię tęcęre**, *to remember*.
8. **maxįmis pętest ĩtįnęrįbus**, *by the longest possible marches*.

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit esse nonnullos, qui privātim plus¹ possint² quā ipsi magistrātus. 2. Nōn erat dūbium, quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū¹ Helvētii possent.³ 3. Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquānos plūrimū pōterat. 4. Divitiācus dixit eos, qui et sua virtūte et pōpuli Rōmāni hospitio atque amicitia plūrimū antē in Gallia pōtuissent,² coactos esse⁴ Sēquānis⁵ obsides dare. 5. Dēcima lēgio pēr tribūnos militum ei grātiās ēgit. 6. Caesāri rēnunciātur⁶ Helvētiis⁷ esse in animo pēr agrum Sēquānōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere. 7. Helvētii lēgātos ad eum mittunt⁸ qui dicerent⁹ sibi esse in animo sinē ullo mālēficio iter pēr prōvinciā facere. 8. Pars aperto lātēre¹⁰ lēgiōnes circumvenire coepit.¹¹ 9. Capto monte¹² Boii et Tulingi nostros lātēre aperto aggressi circumvenire coeperunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex equis ut collōquerentur¹³ et praeter se dēnos ut ad collōquium addūcerent,¹³ postulāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quā Gallos obtinere dictum est,¹⁴ attingit ab¹⁵ Sēquānis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id¹⁶ hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undīquē loci nātūrā Helvētii continentur. 13. Mōribus¹⁷ suis Orgetōrigem ex vinculis¹⁸ causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum¹⁹ poenam sequi oportēbat,²⁰ ut igni cremārētur. 14. Caesar, quod mēmōriā²¹ tēnēbat²² L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumquē ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum²³ et sub jūgum missum,²³ concēdendum²⁴ nōn putābat. 15. Caesāri quū id²⁵ nunciātum esset,²⁶ eos pēr prōvinciā nostram iter facere cōnari,²⁷ mātūrat ab urbe prōficisci et quā maximis pōtest itinērībus²¹ in Galliam ultēriōrem contendit et ad Gēnēvam pervēnit. 16. Itāquē re¹² frūmentāriā quā celerrīme pōtuit cōmpārātā magnis itinērībus ad Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dicit Dumnōrigem complūres annos²⁸ portōria reliquaque²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvo pretio rēdempta habere,³⁰ proptēreā quod illo¹² licente contrā licēri audeat³¹ nemo.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See A. & G. 240, a: A. & S. 397: B. 222, RULE XIII.: B. & M. 728: G. 331, REMARKS 2 and 3: H. 378: C. 128, 2.
- ² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See 152.
- ³ Why the Subjunctive? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.
- ⁴ From *cōgo*. ⁵ See 39.
- ⁶ What is the subject of *rēnunciātur*? What is it that *is reported to Caesar*?
- ⁷ See 137; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do*? What then is the subject of *essē*?
- ⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.
- ⁹ See 136 and Example 10; what question does *qui dicērent* answer?
- ¹⁰ *lātēre* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where*?
- ¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coepit*? See 127.
- ¹² See 122. ¹³ See 136 and Example 9.
- ¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est*?
- ¹⁵ *āb*, *on the side of*.
- ¹⁶ *id — quōd*, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because*; lit., *he persuaded this to them*, etc.; for *hōc*, see 79.
- ¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.
- ¹⁸ *ex vincūlis*, *in chains*; what is its literal meaning?
- ¹⁹ *damnātum*, *if condemned*; see 121; it modifies *eūm* understood, the object of *sēqui*.
- ²⁰ What kind of a verb is *oportēbat*? See 128; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.
- ²¹ See 54.
- ²² What kind of a clause is *quōd — tēnēbat*? See 149; what is the object of *tēnēbat*?
- ²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.
- ²⁴ *concēdendum*, sc. *essē*; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.
- ²⁵ To what does *id* refer? What *had been reported* to Caesar?
- ²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2. ²⁷ *cōnāri* is in apposition with *id*.
- ²⁸ See 93. ²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.
- ³⁰ *rēdempta hābere*, *had bought up*.
- ³¹ What kind of a verb is *audeat*? See A. & G. 136: A. & S. 196, a. B. 110, a: B. & M. 312: G. 182: H. 268, 3: C. 81, 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.



I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus muscūlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haec fabūla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupo, *Non tu, inquit, sed tectum mihi maledicet.*

Saepe locus et tempus homīnes timīdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explicans, *Quanta est, inquit, formositas mea et tua deformitas!* At grus evölans, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitas mea et tua tarditas!*

Monet haec fabūla, ne ob aliquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse majōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicātus, *Cur non, inquit, relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbidos campos, qui tibi laetum pabulum offērunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi non est in animo dulcia tutis praepo-
nere*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabulo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod non patēris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fabula invidiae indōlem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidērat, quum ei forte occurrisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene morerētur formidīne. Eundem conspicāta itērum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accedere eumque allōqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxīma concordia, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singuli a feris petīti et laniāti sunt.

Fabula docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asīnus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat homīnes et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant; unde agnītus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabūla stolīdos notat, qui immerītis honorībus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repērit, nisi quod in aliis gallīnis reperīri solet. Itāque dum majorībus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdīdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asīnum oberrantem in solitudine conspicātī, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberībus abstīnent, asīnus aufūgit et neuter eo potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubīcen ab hostībus captus, *Ne me, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum, inquit, te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.*

Fabūla docet, non solum malefīcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingēre posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit : *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollērem.*

Haec fabūla docet, multos ea contemnere, quae se assēqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomōdo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnabulum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonitu admonitos eam fugere posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabulum annecteret, nemo repertus est.

Fabūla docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audāces, sed in ipso pericūlo timīdos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrāhat. Hoc grus longitudīne colli facile effēcit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subridens lupus et dentibus infrendens, *Num tibi, inquit, parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolūme ex lupi faucibus extraxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul a Janicūlo arcem condidit, eamque Saturniam appellāvit. Hic Itālos primus agriculturam docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionībus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercērat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quam in honōrem conjūgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtūlit, urbemque condidit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genitus erat. Ejus postēri omnes usque ad Romam conditam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romūlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militībus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutērent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmīne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios reliquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numītor paterna bona praetūlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissime possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgīnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotībus non licet viro nubēre. Sed haec a Marte gemīnos filios Romūlum et Remum pepērit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincūla conjēcit, puēros autem in Tibērim abjēci jussit.

7. Forte Tibēris aqua ultra ripam se effudērat, et, quum puēri in vado essent posīti, aqua refluens eos in sicco reliquit. Ad eōrum vagītum lupa accurrit, eosque uberībus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustūlus quidam, pastor illīus regiōnis, puēros sustulit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegerunt. Quum adolevissent et forte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno quam Romūlus a suo nomīne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenībus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augēret, asyllum patefēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatībus suis pulsi accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civībus conjūges deērant. Festum itāque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitīmis popūlis cum mulierībus et libēris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgīnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Popūli illi, quorum virgīnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpēiam virgīnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manibus gerērent, ānūlos aureos et armillas significans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romūlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjūges et socēros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facērent. Utrīque his precibus commōti sunt. Romūlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debītā patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptārum nominibus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesīmo septīmo, quum exercitum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis homīnum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatoribus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13. Post Romūli mortem unius anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurīma instituit, ut popūli barbāri et bellicōsi mores mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjūgis suæ, jussu facere dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragesimo tertio impēri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitērat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horatiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamine finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufēti diruit. Quum triginta duōbus annis regnasset, fulmīne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avo similis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdedit. Carcērem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibēris ostia urbem condidit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesimo quarto anno impēri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquila pileum abstūlit, et, postquam alte evolavērat, reposuit. Hinc Tanāquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romæ commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritatem consecutus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem reliquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatoribus, quos Romūlus creavērat, centum alios addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros hostibus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesimo octāvo imp̄ri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occisus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nobili femina, captiva tamen et familia. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educaretur, flamma in ejus capite visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanquil ei summam dignitatem portendi intellexit, et conjugii persuasit, ut eum sicuti liberos suos educaret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanquil de superiore parte domus populum allocuta est, dicens; *regem grave quidem sed non letale vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret, Servio Tullio obediret.* Sic Servius regnare coepit, sed bene imperium administravit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, filii ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradibus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properavit, et prima conjugem regem salutavit. Quum domum rediret, aurigam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.

**Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome,
B. C. 534 – 510.**

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognomen moribus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimorum populorum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdīdit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissimae femīnae, conjūgi Tarquini Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marīti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuērat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliūque nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, qui civitātem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Fugit itāque cum uxōre et libēris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. *ut* — liberāret, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — *corrōsis plagis*, by gnawing the nets; see 122. — *quo*, see 122; what is its antecedent? — *ostendit*, what is its object? — *mali*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *soleant*, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. *lupo*, see 132. — *praetereunti* (*praeter* and *eo*), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 144, *b*: A. & S. 249 (5): B. 111, *c*, 2: B. & M. 444: G. 190, 2: H. 297, II., 2: C. 86, 2. — *reddit*, see A. & G. 205, *b*: A. & S. 320: B. 287, *a*: B. & M. 644: G. 281, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2: C. 110, 2, *b*.

3. *explicans*, spreading. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *ali-quod*, see 116, *a*. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia*, *majōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum*, abundant. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tutis*, see 67.

5. *boves*, see A. & G. 61, page 33: A. & S. 110, *bōs*: B. 138: B. & M. 123: G. 80: H. 66: C. 31. — *latrando*, see 153 and 54. — *quod* —

patēris, see 149. — *cibo*, see 54 and 104. — *velis*, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *occurrisset*, see A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5. — *more-rētur*, see 139. — *nequāquam*, *antea*, what do they modify? — *obviam facta*, *having met*; *obviam* is used with the Dative. — *ausa est*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. *pascebantur*, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see 36. — *boves*, see note on *boves*, Fable 5. — *petiti*, *sc. sunt*. — *boni*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *sit*, see 151.

8. *pelle*, see 54. — *indātus*, *having clothed himself*. — *esset*, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 481, (2): G. 604: H. 513, II.: C. 220. — *movet*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — *unde*, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — *agnītus*, from *agnosco*; render as if it were *agnītus est*, and supply *and*. — *dedit*, *suffered*. — *honoribus*, see 79.

9. *suspiciāri*, see 69. — *coepit*, see 127. — *illam*, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — *quod* is here equivalent to *id quod*; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — *solet*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *majoribus*, see 84 and 85. — *divitiis*, see 67. — *minōres*, what does it modify?

10. *duo*, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *accurrunt*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — *laeti*, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557, *h*: B. 270, *b*: B. & M. 663: G. 324, REMARK 6: H. 443: C. 113, 6. — *prior*, see note on *laeti*; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — *conspexisset*, see 149. — *eo*, see 104.

11. *tubicen*, what is its derivation? see GEN. VY. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *interficiēte*, see 47. — *inermis*, derivation? see GEN. VY. — *propter hoc ipsum*, *for this very reason*; what is the reason? — *pugnandi*, see 153 and 140. — *sis*, see 145. — *soles*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *esse puniendos*, see 130. — *eos*, why in the Accusative? — *irritent*, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, (2), (*d*): B. 301: B. & M. 1220, *b*: G. 633: H. 500, I.: C. 223, 1.

12. *vulpes*, see A. & G. 30, *b*: A. & S. 84: B. 118, III., REM. 2: B. & M. 41: G. 20, 3: H. 43, 3: C. 13, I., 3. — *omnium* — *contentiōne*, *with all its might*; what is the literal translation? for the Abl. *contentiōne*, see 54. — *Si*, (*to see*) *whether*. — *posset*, see 151. — *repertas*, from *reperio*; see 121. — *tollērem*, see 143 and A. & G. 310, *a*; A. & S. 477, *e*: B. 305, *third clause*: G. 594, 2: H. 507, NOTE 7: C. 219; 250. — *quae*, see 34. — *se*, see 53. — *despērent*, see note on *irritent*, Fable 11.

13. *quomōdo*, (*to see*) *by what means*. — *sibi*, see A. & G. 227, *c*: A. & S. 378: B. 239: B. & M. 836: G. 347: H. 385, 1: C. 160. — *cavērent*.

see 151. — *aliis*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and 122. — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *annæctarētur*, see A. & G. 332, *a*: A. & S. 494, *a*: B. 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1222: G. 558: H. 501, I., 1: C. 208. — *sic* — *posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaererētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaererētur*? — *suadēdo*, see 153. — *plurimos*, see 85 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaereo*. — *mercēde*, see 146. — *extrahat*, see 136. — *hoc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postulāret*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — *merces*, see 64. — *vidētur*, what is its subject? — *faucibus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Janicūlo*, the *Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the seven hills are on the east side; these are the *Palatine*, *Capitoline*, *Quirinal*, *Aventine*, *Coelian*, *Esquiline*, and *Viminal*. — *eam Saturniam*, see 58. — *Itālos, agricultūram*, see 71. — *primus* — *docuit*, was the first who taught; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557 *h*: B. 271, REMARK: B. & M. 663: G. 324, 7: H. 442, NOTE: C. 113, 6, note 1.

2. *in* — *regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub*, in the reign of. — *Troja*, Troy is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — *hinc*, from this place, i. e. from Troy. — *Aenēae, Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. 37: A. & S. 94: B. 125: B. & M. 52: G. 72: H. 50: C. 20. — *quibus*, see 132. — *Lavinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēae*, see note on *Aenēae* in preceding section. — *transtūlit*, see 123. — *Albam Longam, Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. — *secūtus est*, succeeded. — *genitus erat*, from *gigno*. — *ad Romam conditam*, until the founding of Rome; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see 106.

4. *Jove*, see 133 and A. & G. 60, *b*, page 32: A. & S. 111, (3): B. 138: B. & M. 123: H. 66, 3: C. 31. — *tonāret*, see 128 and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multo*, see 144. — *tonitru*, what case? why? — *ictus, sc. est*. — *Albanum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor natu* = junior; for *natu*, see 124. — *vellet*, see 125 and 151. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *vestālem virgīnem*, a *vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *viro nubēre*, to marry; for *viro*, see 132; what does *nubēre* mean? — *pepērit*, from *pario*. — *hoc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent posīti*, see A. & G. 326: A. & S. 510 (2): B. 302, 1: B. & M. 1251: G. 587: H. 517: C. 214, 3. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did a certain *Faustulus* see? — *regiōnis*, what *region* is meant? — *nutriendos*, to be nourished, modifies *pueros*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adolevisissent*, from *adoleasco*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisse* and see 151. — *monte Aventino*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *civibus*, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 380: B. 242, REM. 3: B. & M. 820: H. 386: C. 154. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ipsos*, very. — *spectantes*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Romae*, see 67. — *in incidērunt*, they came unexpectedly upon. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gerērent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, these also, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Montem Tarpēium*, the *Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Romānum*, the *Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, the *Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *media*, midst of. — *raptae*, sc. *muliēres*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, here — there. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *ico*.

12. *quum* — *tum*, both — and. — *raptārum*, sc. *muliērum*. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ortam*, which had arisen. — *ocūlis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentences. — *alii* — *alii*, some — others. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublātum esse* from *tollo*.

13. *quo*, what is its antecedent? — *Curibus*, see 106. — *jussu*, see 79. *facēre*, what is its object? — *morbo decessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *decessit* supply *de vita*.

14. *praestitērat*, what does it govern? see 58. — *creātus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horatiōrum*. The *Horatii* fought for Rome, the *Curiatii* for Alba. The three *Curiatii* fell, but one of the *Horatii* survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufēti*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill ; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time* ; what is the more usual construction ? see 93. — *arsit*, fr. *ardeo*, *ardere*, *arsi*, *arsum*, *burn*.

15. *aequitate*, see 124. — *avo*, see 86. — *bello*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 225, d : A. & S. 379 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 859 : G. 348 : H. 384, II., 2 : C. 152. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbo decessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *qui* refers to *Demarati*. — *advenienti*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 229 : A. & S. 380 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 829 : H. 386, 2 : C. 151. — *abstulit* from *auféro*, *auferre*, *abstuli*, *ablatum*, *carry off* ; derived from *ab away, off* ; and *fero carry*. — *auguriorum*, see 140.

17. *Romae*, see 106. — *commoraretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *tutorem*, as *guardian* ; compare 58. — *pupillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senatores* understood. — *plura*, *several* ; how declined ? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *ademptos*, from *adimo*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloacas*. The main *sewer*, known as the *Cloaca Maxima*, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitolium*, the *Capitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filios*, at the instigation of the sons ; they hired assassins to murder him : *à filiis* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gigno*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domo*, how declined ? See 97. — *conjūgi*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *educaret*, see 136.

19. *domus* ; this stood on the Palatine. — *regem* — *obediret* ; change this to the Direct Discourse ; see 152. — *enim* refers to *regem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *montes* — *adjunxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *milīa*, how declined ? see 108. — *civium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelere*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *curiae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domum*, see 105 ; how declined ? — *prima*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *regem*, as *king* ; compare 58.

21. *cognomen*, i. e. *Superbus*, the *Proud*. — *moribus*, see 79. — *bello*, see 111. — *plures*, how declined ? see note on *plura*, section 17. — *populorum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This *temple* had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus ; see section 17. — *Jovis*, how declined ? see note on *Jove*, section 4. — *Lucretiae*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined ? See GEN. VY. — *ut* — *ulciscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in, for*. — *conjurarunt*, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populo*, see 132. — *ei*, against him ; see 39. — *civitatem* = *urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

āb, ā, prep. w. abl. *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ab away, duco lead), lead away. **ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.**

ab-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (ab away, down; jacio cast), cast away or down. **ABJECT.**

abs-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (ab(s) from, teneo keep), keep from, **ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.**

ab-sūm, essē, fui (ab away, sum be) be away, be **ABSENT, be distant.**

āc. See **atquē.**

Accā, ae, f., Acca Lārentia, the wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (ad towards, cedo go), go towards, draw near, approach; assault. **ACCEDE, ACCESSION.**

ac-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī (ad upon, cado fall), fall upon, befall, happen. **ACCIDENT.**

ac-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm (ad to one's self, capio take), receive, **ACCEPT, take.**

ac-curro, currērē, cūcurrī and currī, cursūm (ad to, curro run), run to, hasten to.

accūso, ārē, āvī, atūm (ad to, causa a lawsuit), **ACCUSE, blame, censure. ACCUSATION.**

ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp. ACRID.

ācerbūs, ā, ūm, sour. ACERBITY.
āciēs, āciēi, f., *edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array.*
 See **agmen.**

ācītēr, ācīūs, ācerrīmē, adv.
 (*acer sharp*), *sharply, fiercely, violently.*

ād, prep. w. acc. to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.

ād-āmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad denoting a beginning, *amo love*), *begin to love, acquire a liking for.*

ād-do, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (ad to, *beside; do put*), **ADD.**

ād-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ad to, *duco lead*), *lead to, lead; influence.*

ād-eo, irē, iī, itūm (ad to, *eo go*), *go to.* See 126.

ād-īmo, īmērē, ēmī, emptūm (ad to one's self, *emo take*), *take away.*

ādītūs, ūs, m. (adeo go to), ap-proach, *access.*

ād-jungo, jungērē, junxī, junc-tūm (*ad to, jungo join*), *join to, join.*

ād-mīnistro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad without additional force, *ministro serve*), **ADMINISTER, manage. ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.**

ād-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm (ad to, *mitto let go*), *allow, ADMIT; give the reins to; equo admisso, at full speed. AD-*MISSION.

ād-mōneo, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm (ad w. no perceptible additional force, *moneo admonish*), **ADMONISH, warn. ADMONITION.**

ādōlesco, adōlescērē, adōlēvī, adūltūm (adoleo *cause to grow up*), *grow, increase, grow up. ADULT.*

ād-sūm, ad-essē, af-fuī (ad near, *sum be*), *be near, be present: assist.*

ād-vēnio, venīrē, vēnī, ventūm (ad to, *venio come*), *come to, arrive, come. ADVENTURE.*

adventūs, ūs, m. (advenio *come to*), *arrival, approach. ADVENT.*

adversūs and adversūm, prep. w. acc. towards, against.

ād-vertō, vertērē, vertī, ver-sūm (*ad towards, verto turn*), *turn towards; id animum ad-vertēre, to turn the mind towards it. AD-VERT.*

aedīficiūm, ī, n. (aedifico *build*), *building, EDIFICE.*

aedīfīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (aedes *building for habitation, facio make*), *build. EDIFY, EDIFICATION.*

Aedui, ōrūm, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.

aegēr aegrā, aegrūm, sick.

Aenēas, ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.

aequītās, ātis, f. (aequus *fair, equitable*), **EQUITY, justice, moderation.**

aequūs, ā, ūm, even, level;
EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.

aestās, ātis, f., summer.

aetās, ātis, f., age.

af-fēro, af-ferrē, at-tŭlī, al-lātŭm
(ad to, fero bring), bring to,
carry to; offer; carry.

af-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectŭm (ad
to, facio do), AFFECT, influence;
magno dolōre affici, to be very
grievously affected.

āgēr, agrī, m., field, land; country,
territory.

aggēr, aggērīs, m., mound; mate-
rials for a mound.

ag-grēdior, grēdī, gressŭs sŭm
(ad to, gradior go), go to, ap-
proach; go against, attack. AG-
GRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmēn, agmīnīs, n. (ago put in
motion), army on the march,
line of march; [acies, army in
battle array; exercitus, a dis-
ciplined army]; **agmen novis-
simum**, the rear; **primum
agmen**, the van.

ag-nosco, noscērē, nōvī, nītŭm
(ad denoting reference, (g)nos-
co know), recognize; know.

āgo, āgērē, ēgī, actŭm, put in
motion; lead, drive, conduct; act,
do, perform. ACTION, AGENT.

agricultŭrā, ae, f. (ager field,
colo cultivate), AGRICULTURE.

ālācēr, ālacrīs, ālacrē, lively,
cheerful; eager, fierce.

ālacrītās, ātis, f. (alacer lively),
liveliness, eagerness, zeal. ALAC-
RITY.

Albā or **Albā Longā**, the mother
city of Rome, built by Ascanius.
Albānŭs, ī, m., an Alban, an in-
habitant of Alba.

alīquandō, adv. (aliquis some
one), at some time, once, for-
merly.

ālīquīs, indef. pron. [see 116, a],
some one, somebody, something,
some; anyone, anybody, anything,
any.

āliŭs, āliā, āliŭd [see 24], other,
another.

Allobrōgēs, um, m. pl., a people
in the southeastern part of
Gaul.

al-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtŭs sŭm
(ad to, loquor speak), speak to,
address.

ālo, ālērē, āluī, ālītŭm or **al-
tŭm**, nourish, feed, support.

Alpēs, Alpiŭm, f. pl. the ALPS.

altē, altiŭs, altissimē (altus
high, low), on high, highly; low,
lowly.

altēr, altērā, altērŭm [see 24],
one of two, the other, the second;
altēr — altēr, the one — the
other.

altītŭdo, altītūdīnīs, f. (altus
high, deep), height; depth; ALTI-
TUDE.

altŭs, ā, ūm (alo nourish), high,
lofty; deep.

āmīcītiā, ae, f. (amicus friendly),
friendship.

āmīcŭs, ā, ūm (amo love), loving,
friendly; **āmīcŭs, ī**, m. friend.
AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm
(*ab away, mitto let go*), *lose*.

amplio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*amplus of large extent*), *enlarge*.

ampliūs, adv. *more, farther*.

Amuliūs, ī, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.

ān, adv. *or*.

Anchīsēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.

Ancūs Marciūs, ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.

angustiae, ārūm, f. pl. (*angustus narrow*), *narrow pass, defile; difficulty*.

ānīm-ad-vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūm (*animus mind, advert to turn towards*), *notice*. ANIM-ADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.

ānīmāl, ānīmālīs, n., ANIMAL.

ānīmūs, ī, m., *mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage*.

[**ānīmūs** denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including **mens**; **mens** denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]

an-necto, nectērē, nexuī, nexūm (*ad to, necto tie, fasten*), *tie to, fasten to*. ANNEX.

annūs, ī, m., *year*. ANNUAL.

antē, prep. w. acc., *before*; *adv. before, previously*. ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.

anteā, adv. (*ante before, ea that*), *before, previously*.

antiquūs, ā, ūm (*ante before*), *ancient, old; of long continuance*.

ANTIQUÉ, ANTIQUATED.

ānūlūs, ī, m., *ring*. ANNULAR.

Ap., abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.

āpertūs, ā, ūm (*aperio uncover*), *uncovered, unprotected*.

ap-pello, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ad to, pello bring one's self to a person*), *address; name, call*. APPEAL, APPELLATION.

ap-prōpinquo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ad to, propinquo draw near*), *draw near to, approach*.

āpūd, prep. w. acc., *at, near, in presence of, among*.

āquā, ae, f., *water*. AQUEDUCT.

āquīlā, ae, f., *eagle*.

Aquīlēiā, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Aquītānī, ōrūm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquītāniā, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arār, Arārīs, acc. Arārīm, m., the Saône [pronounced Sōne], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.

arcesso, arcessērē, arcessivī, arcessitūm, *invile, summon*.

arceo, arcērē, arcuī, drive away; *ward off, keep from; restrain*.

Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutūli.

armā, ōrūm, n. pl., ARMS, *weapons*.

armillā, ae, f., *bracelet or ring*, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-rīpio, rīpĕrĕ, rīpuī, reptūm
(ad upon, rapio seize), seize upon.

arrōgantiā, ae, f. (arrogans assuming), haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.

Arvernī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcīs, f., citadel, fortress.

Ascaniūs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

āsīnūs, ī, m., an ass.

as-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm
(ad with no perceptible additional force, sequor follow), follow; overtake; obtain.

āsylūm, ī, n. ASYLUM.

āt, conj. but.

at-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tīgī, tactūm
(ad against, tango touch), touch against, border upon; touch, reach.

atquĕ, āc, conj. (ad in addition, que and), and also, and.

auctōritās, ātīs, f. (auctor producer), AUTHORITY, influence.

audāciā, ae, f. (audax bold), boldness, AUDACITY.

audācītĕr or audactĕr, audāciūs, audācissīmĕ, adv. (audax bold), boldly, courageously.

audax, gen. audācis (audeo dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audĕrĕ, ausūs sūm [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], dare, venture.

audio, irĕ, ivī, itūm, hear. AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fūgio, fūgĕrĕ, fūgī, fūgītūm
(ab away, fugio flee), flee away, escape; flee.

augeo, augĕrĕ, auxī, auctūm, increase, AUGMENT.

augūrium, ī, n. (auguror fr. augur diviner), AUGURY, divination.

aureūs, ā, ūm (aurum gold), golden.

aurīgā, ae, m. (aurea bridle, ago manage), charioteer.

aurīs, aurīs, f. ear. AURI-CULAR. **aurūm, ī, n.,** gold.

aut, conj. or; **aut — aut,** either — or.

autĕm, conj., but, yet, moreover.

auxīlium, ī, n. (augeo increase), help, aid; pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventīnūs, ī, m., the Aventine.

aversūs, ā, ūm (averto turn away), turned away; **aversus hostis,** a retreating enemy.

ā-vertō, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versūm
(ab away, verto turn), turn away, turn aside, AVERT. AVERSION.

āvūs, ī, m., grandfather.

B.

barbārūs, ā, ūm, foreign; uncivilized; savage, rude, BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātūs, ā, ūm (beo bless), happy. BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārūm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.

bellīcōsūs, ā, ūm, *warlike*.
bello, ārē, āvī, atŭm (*bellum war*), *carry on war*.
bellŭm ī, n., *war*.
bēnē, adv., *well, finely*.
bēnēficiūm, ī, n., *kindness*, BENEFIT. BENEFICIAL.
bēnignē, adv. (*benignus kind*), *kindly*; BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.
bestiā, ae, f., *BEAST*.
Bibractē, īs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.
biennium, ī, n. (*bis twice, annus year*), *two years*. BIENNIAL.
Bōii, ōrŭm, m. pl., the Boii [pronounced *Bó-yi*], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.
bōnūs, ā, ūm, *good, friendly*; **bōnŭm**, ī, n. *a good thing, an advantage*; **bōnā**, ōrŭm, n. pl., *goods, an estate*.
bōs, bōvīs, m. and f., *ox, cow*.
brēvīs, brēvē, *short*, BRIEF.
Brūtŭs, ī, m. (*brutus stupiū*), *L. Junius Brutus*, the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Gāiŭs** [pronounced *Gá-yus*], a Roman praenomen.
caedēs, caedīs, f. (*caedo kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage*.
caedo, caedērē, cēcīdī, caesŭm, *cut, cut down; kill, mur-*

der. -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.
Caesār, **Caesārīs**, m., *Caius Julius Caesar*, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.
Cāiŭs Vālériŭs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.
cālāmītās, ātīs, f., *CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune*.
campŭs, ī, m., *plain, field*; **Campus**, the *Campus Martius*, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.
cānīs, cānīs, m. and f., *dog*.
cāpio, cāpērē, cēpī, captŭm, *take, CAPTURE*.
Cāpītōlium, ī, n. (*caput head*), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; the *Capitoline hill*, including both temple and citadel.
caprā, ae, f., *a she-goat*.
captīvŭs, ā, ūm (*capio capture*), CAPTIVE; **captivŭs**, ī, m., *a captive, a prisoner*.
cāpŭt, cāpītīs, n., *head*. OCCIPUT.
carcēr, carcērīs, m., *prison*. INCARCER-ATE.
cāreo, cārērē, cāruī, cārītŭm *be without, lack*.
carpentŭm, ī, n., *chariot*.
carrŭs, ī, m., *CART, wagon*.
cārŭs, ā, ūm, *dear, beloved*.
Cassiŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellūm, ī, n. (*castrum a fortified place*), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticūs, ī, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrā, ōrūm, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.

causā, ae, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; **causā, for the sake of,** when following a Genitive; **causam dicere, to plead one's cause.**

cāveo, cāvērē, cāvī, cautūm, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS.

cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē (cello *impel*), swift, speedy. CELERITY.

cēlērītēr, cēlērīūs, cēlerrīmē, adv. (*celer swift*), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cēlo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, CONCEAL, hide.

censūs, ūs, m. (*censeo assess, register*), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, ūm, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centūm, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmēn, certāmīnīs, n. (*certo contend*), contest; battle.

certūs, ā, ūm (*cerno determine*), CERTAIN, sure; **Caesarēm certiōrem facere, to inform Caesar.**

cētērī, ae, ā, adj. pl., the rest.

cībūs, ī, m., food.

cingo, cingērē, cinxī, cinctūm, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circītēr, adv. (*circus circle*), about, near.

circūm, prep. w. acc. (*circus circle*), around; near, in the environs of. CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, dārē, dēdī, dātūm (*circum around, do put*), put around, surround.

circum-vēnio, vērīrē, vērī, ventūm (*circum around, venio come*), come around, surround; CIRCUMVENT.

cītērīor, cītērīūs [see 85], hither.

citrā, prep. w. acc., this side of.

cīvīs, cīvīs, m. and f., citizen. CIVIL.

cīvītās, ātīs, f. (*civis citizen*), a body of citizens, a state; citizenship.

clārūs, ā, ūm, CLEAR; famous.

claudio, claudērē, clausī, clausūm, close, enclose, shut; **agmen claudere, to bring up the rear.** IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.

cliens, clientīs, m. and f., (*cluens fr. clueo hear*), CLIENT, vassal.

clīpeūs or clȳpeūs, ī, m., shield.

cloācā, ae, f., drain, sewer; **Cloāca maxīma,** the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coepī, coepissē [see 127], have begun, began.

cōgīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cum denoting completeness, agito weigh in the mind*), consider, reflect upon. COGITATE.

- cognōmēn, cognōmīnīs, n.** (cum denoting *similarity*, (g)nomen name), a surname.
- co-gnosco, gnoscerē, gnōvī, gnītūm** (cum denoting *completeness*, (g)nosco know), know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. **COGNITION.**
- cōgo, cōgērē, coēgī, coactūm** (cum together, ago drive), drive or lead together, collect; compel. **COGENT.**
- cohors, cohortīs, f., COHORT,** the tenth part of a legion.
- co-hortor, ārī, ātūs sūm** (cum intensive, hortor urge), exhort, encourage.
- Collātīnūs, ī, m.,** cognomen of L. Tarquinius.
- collīs, collīs, m.,** a hill.
- col-lōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum denoting *completeness*, loco place), lay, put, place; **nuptum** — collocāre, to give in marriage. **COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.**
- collōquiūm, ī, n.** (colloquor speak together), conference, interview. **COLLOQUY.**
- col-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm** (cum with, loquor speak), speak with, hold a conference.
- collūm, ī, n.,** neck.
- cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm,** dwell; till, **CULTIVATE**; honor.
- com-būro, būrērē, bussī, bustūm** (cum denoting *completeness*, (b)uro burn), burn up. **COMBUSTION.**
- comītium, ī, n.** (cum together, eo go), the comitium, a place where the Romans assembled to vote.
- commeātūs, ūs, m.** (commeo come and go), supplies, provisions.
- com-mēmōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum intensive, memoro remind of), call to mind; relate. **COMMEMORATION.**
- com-meo, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum denoting *frequency*, meo go), come and go, resort; **ad Belgas commeāre**, to visit the Belgae.
- com-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, mis-sūm** (cum together, mitto cause to go), join; begin; **COMMIT. COMMISSION.**
- commodē, adv.** (commodus advantageous), advantageously, fitly, conveniently; **satis commōde**, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.
- commōdūs, ā, ūm** (cum denoting *completeness*, modus measure), advantageous, suitable, fit. **COMMODIOUS.**
- com-mōror, ārī, ātūs sūm** (cum denoting *completeness*, moror tarry), stop; reside, stay at; remain.
- com-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm** (cum intensive, moveo move), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. **COMMO-TION.**
- com-mūnio, mūnīrē, mūnīvī** and **mūnīi, mūnītūm** (cum

- denoting *completeness*, *munio* (*fortify*), *fortify on all sides*.
- commūnīs, commūnē** (cum together, *munis* serving), **COMMON**.
- com-pāro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum intensive, *paro* prepare), *prepare with zeal, make ready*.
- com-pērio, pēirē, pēri, per-tūm**, *learn, discover*.
- com-plector, plectī, plexūs sūm** (cum with, *plector* entwine one's self), *embrace*.
- complūrēs, complūrā** (rarely *complūriā*), gen. *complūri-ūm*, adj. pl. (cum together, *plures* several), *several together, very many*.
- com-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum together, *porto* bring), *bring together, collect*. **COMPORT**.
- cōnātūm, ī, n.** (*conor* to attempt), *an attempt*.
- con-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm** (cum denoting completeness, *cedo* yield), *grant*; **CONCEDE**. **CONCESSION**.
- concīlio, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*concilium* a calling together), *bring together; win*, **CONCILIATE**.
- concīlium, ī, n.** (cum together, *calo* call), **COUNCIL**, *assembly*.
- concordiā, ae, f.** (*concor* fr. cum denoting similarity, *cor* heart), **CONCORD**, *harmony*.
- con-curro, currērē, cūcurri** and *curri, cursūm* (cum together, *curro* run), *rush together; hasten*. **CONCURRENT**.
- condītio, condītiōnīs, f.** (*condo* put together), **CONDITION**.
- condo, condērē, condīdī, condītūm** (cum together, *do* put), *found, build*.
- con-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm** (cum together, *duco* lead), *lead together, collect; hire*; **CONDUCE**.
- con-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, col-lātūm** (cum together, *fero* bring), *bring together, collect; put off*; **CONFER**; **se conferre**, *to betake one's self*. **CONFERENCE**, **COLLATE**, **COLLATION**.
- con-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm** (cum denoting completeness, *facio* make), *execute, accomplish, finish*. **CONFECTION**.
- con-firmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum denoting completeness, *firmus* firm), *establish, strengthen*, **CONFIRM**; *encourage; assert*. **CONFIRMATION**.
- con-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm** (cum intensive, *jacio* throw), *hurl*. **CONJECTURE**.
- conjūrātio, conjūrātiōnīs, f.** (*conjūro* swear together), *conspiracy*.
- con-jūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (cum together, *juro* swear), *swear together; conspire*. **CONJURE**.
- conjux, conjūgīs, m. and f.** (*conjungo* fr. cum together, *jungo* join), *spouse, husband, wife*.
- cōnor, āri, ātūs sūm**, *attempt, try*. **CONATIVE**.

consciūs, ā, ūm (cum *with*, scio *know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensūs, ūs, m. (consentio *think together*), *agreement*, CONSENT.

con-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (cum denoting *completeness*, sequor *follow*), *follow after, follow; gain; obtain*. CONSEQUENT.

con-sēro, sērērē, sēruī, sertūm (cum *together*, sero *join*), *join together, join; pugnam conserere, to join battle, to fight*.

Considiūs, ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sido, sidērē, sēdī, sessūm (cum *together*, sido *sit down*), *sit down together, encamp*.

consiliūm, ī, n., *deliberation*, COUNSEL, *plan, design*.

con-sisto, sistērē, stitī, stitūm (cum denoting *completeness*, sisto *place one's self*), *take a stand; keep a position; halt*. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

con-sōlor, ārī, ātūs sūm (cum *intensive*, solor *comfort*), *comfort greatly*, CONSOLE; *encourage, cheer*.

conspēctūs, ūs, m. (conspicio *look at*), *sight, view, presence*.

con-spīcio, spīcērē, spexī, spectūm (cum denoting *completeness*, specio *look*), *behold, see*.

conspīcor, ārī, ātūs sūm (conspicio), *behold, see*.

constantīā, ae, f. (constans *standing firm*), *firmness, steadfastness*, CONSTANCY.

con-stītuō, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-

tūtūm (cum denoting *completeness*, statuo *cause to stand*), *resolve, determine; establish, station*.

CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, consuescērē, consuevī, consuētūm, *become accustomed, be wont*.

consūl, consūlīs, m. (akin to consulo *consult*), CONSUL; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

con-sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sumptūm (cum denoting *completeness*, sumo *take*), CONSUME, *waste, destroy*. CONSUMPTION.

con-temno, temnērē, tempsī, temptūm, *despise*, CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm (cum denoting *completeness*, tendo *stretch*), *hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight; w. inf. proceed, set out eagerly*.

contentio, contentiōnīs, f. (contendo *contend*), CONTENTION, *strife*.

con-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (cum *together*, teneo *hold*), *hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain*. CONTENT, CONTINENT.

contīnentēr, adv. (contīnens *hanging together*), *continually, without cessation*.

con-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm (cum denoting *completeness*, tango *touch*), *touch on all sides; touch, border upon*. CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against*.

contūmēliā, ae, f. (*cum intensive, tumeo swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace*. CONTUMELY.

con-vālesco, vālescērē, vālūī (*cum denoting completeness, valesco grow strong*), *regain health, recover*. CONVALESCENT.

con-vēnio, vēnirē, vēnī, ventūm (*cum together, venio come*), *come together, assemble*; CON-VENE. CONVENTION.

conventūs, ūs, m. (*convenio come together*), *court*; **conventum agēre**, *to hold a court*.

con-vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūm (*cum denoting completeness, verto turn*), *turn about, change*; *in fugam convertēre*, *to put to flight*. CONVERT, CONVERSION.

con-vōcō, āre, āvī, ātūm (*cum together, voco call*), *call together, summon*, CONVOKE. CONVOCA-TION.

cōpiā, ae, f. (*cum denoting completeness, ops means of any kind*), *plenty, abundance, supply*; *number*; pl., *forces, troops*; *riches*.

cōpiōsūs, ā, ūm (*copia plenty, osus full of*), *wealthy, well-supplied*; COPIOUS.

cōrām, prep. w. abl., *in the presence of; before*: adv., *openly*.

Cōrīnthūs, ī, f., *Corinth*, a city in Greece.

corpūs, corpōrīs, n., *body*; CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn*; *wing, flank* of an army.

cor-rōdo, rōdērē, rōsī, rōsūm (*cum denoting completeness, rodo gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces, gnaw*; CORRODE.

Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a celebrated Roman.

crēmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *burn*. CREMATION.

creo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *CREATE, elect, choose, appoint*. CREATION.

crūs, crūrīs, n., *leg*.

cultūs, ūs, m. (*colo cultivate*), CULTURE, *civilization*.

cūm, prep. w. abl., *with, together with*.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f. (*cupīdus desirous*), *desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm*; CUPIDITY.

cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, (*cupio desire*), *desirous, fond*.

cūpio, cūpērē, cūpīvī and cūpiī, *cupītūm, desire*.

cūr, interrog. adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūrā, ae, f. (*quaero seek*), *care*.

Cūrēs, Cūrīūm, f. pl., *chief town* of the Sabines.

cūrīā, ae, f., *curia* or *ward*; *senate-house*.

Curiātīi, ōrūm, m. pl., *the name* of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.

cūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cura care*), *care for, attend to, cause something to be done*. CURATE.

custōs, custōdīs, m. and f., *guard, watch*. CUSTODIAN.

D.

damno, *ārē, āvī, atum* (damnum *penalty*), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., *down from, from; of; about, concerning; for*.

deā, ae, f. [see **11**], goddess.

dēbeo, *ērē, uī, itum* (de *from, habeo have*), owe.

dē-cēdo, *cēdērē, cessī, cessum* (de *away, cedo go*), go away, depart, retire.

dē-certo, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de *intensive, certo contend*), fight, contend.

dēcīmūs, ā, ūm (decem *ten*), tenth.

dē-cīpio, *cīpērē, cēpī, ceptum* (de *intensive, capio ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

declāro, *ārē, āvī, atum*, show, DECLARE.

dē-dūco, *dūcērē, duxī, ductum* (de *down, away, duco lead*), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fātigo, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de denoting *completeness, fatigo weary*), weary completely, fatigue.

dē-fendo, *fendērē, fendī, fensum*, DEFEND.

dēformītās, *ātīs, f.*, DEFORMITY, ugliness.

deinde, adv., then, after that.

dē-jicio, *jicērē, jēcī, jectum* (de *down, jacio throw*), throw or cast down. DEJECTION.

dēlectūs, ā, ūm (deligo *choose*), chosen.

dēleo, *dēlērē, dēlēvī, dēlētum* destroy. DELETERIOUS.

dē-libēro, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de denoting *completeness, libro weigh in one's mind*), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dē-ligo, *līgērē, lēgī, lectum* (de *apart, lego gather*), select, choose.

Dēmārātūs, ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-mitto, *mittērē, mīsī, missum* (de *down, mitto let go*), let go down; capite *demisso*, with bowed head.

dē-monstro, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de *intensive, monstro show*), point out, show, DEMONSTRATE; declare. DEMONSTRATION.

dēnī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl., ten each.

dēnīquē, adv., at last, finally.

dens, *dentīs*, m., tooth. DENTAL.

dē-pōno, *pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsitum* (de *down, pono put*), put down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

de-scendo, *scendērē, scendī, scensum* (de *down, scando go*), DESCEND.

de-scribo, *scribērē, scripsī, scriptum*, DESCRIBE; divide. DESCRIPTION.

dē-signo, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de *intensive, signo mark*), DESIGNATE, describe, mean.

de-spēro, *ārē, āvī, atum* (de denoting *negation, spero hope*) despair. DESPERATION.

de-stītuō, *stītuērē, stītuī, stītū-*

- tŭm** (de *away*, *statuo put*), forsake, abandon. **DESTITUTE**, **DESTITUTION**.
- dē-sŭm**, **de-essē**, **dē-fui** (de *away*, *sum be*), *be wanting*.
- dētēriōr**, **dētēriūs** [see 85], worse.
- dētrimentŭm**, **i**, n. (*detero fr. de away, tero rub*), *loss; damage, injury*; **DETRIMENT**. **DETRIMENTAL**.
- deŭs**, **i**, m. [see 20], *god*; **DEITY**.
- dē-veho**, **vehērē**, **vexī**, **vectŭm** (de *away, veho carry*), *carry away, bring*.
- dē-vōro**, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātŭm** (de *down, voro swallow*), **DEVOUR**, *eat up*.
- dextēr**, **dextrā**, **dextrŭm**, *right*; **dextrā** (sc. *manu hand*), *on the right*. **DEXTEROUS**.
- dīco**, **dīcērē**, **dixī**, **dictŭm**, *say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name*; **causam dīcēre**, *to plead one's cause*. **DICTUM**.
- diēs**, **diēi**, m., *day*.
- dif-fēro**, **dif-ferrē**, **dis-tŭlī**, **dī-lātŭm** (dis *in different directions, fero carry*), *carry different ways; put off*; **DIFFER**.
- difficilis**, **ē** (dis *negative, facilis easy*), **DIFFICULT**; *impracticable*.
- dignitās**, **ātis**, f. (*dignus worthy*), **DIGNITY**, *rank; honor, office*.
- dignŭs**, **ā**, **ŭm**, *worthy*. **DIGNIFY**.
- dī-mitto**, **mittērē**, **mīsī**, **missŭm** (dis *hither and thither, mitto send*), **DISMISS**.
- dī-ruo**, **ruērē**, **ruī**, **rŭtŭm** (dis *asunder, ruo hurl down*), *destroy; overthrow; raze*.
- dīs**, m. and f.; **dītē**, n.; gen. **dītīs** [**dītiōr**, **dītissimŭs**], *rich*.
- dis-cēdo**, **cēdērē**, **cessī**, **cessŭm** (dis *away, cedo go*), *go away, depart, leave*.
- dissīdiŭm**, **i**, n. (*dissideo fr. dis apart, sedeo sit*), *dissension*.
- dis-trībuo**, **trībuērē**, **trībuī**, **trībŭtŭm** (dis *among several, tribuo give*), **DISTRIBUTE**, *divide*.
- dītio**, **dītīōnis**, f., *dominion, power*.
- diŭ**, **diŭtiŭs**, **diŭtissimē**, adv., *a long time*.
- dīvēs**, gen. **dīvītīs**, adj., *rich*.
- Divīco**, **ōnis**, m., *a distinguished man among the Helvetii*.
- dī-vīdo**, **vīdērē**, **vīsī**, **vīsŭm** (dis *asunder, root vid separate*), **DIVIDE**; *separate*. **DIVISION**.
- Divitiācŭs**, **i**, m., *a chief of the Aedui*.
- dīvītie**, **ārŭm**, f. pl. (*dives rich*), *riches, wealth*.
- do**, **dārē**, **dēdī**, **dātŭm**, *give*.
- dōceo**, **dōcērē**, **dōcuī**, **doctŭm** *teach, instruct; inform*. **DOCTOR**.
- dōlōr**, **dōlōris**, m. (*doleo feel pain*), *grief, sorrow, trouble*. **DOLOROUS**.
- dōlŭs**, **i**, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem*.
- dōmo**, **ārē**, **dōmuī**, **dōmītŭm**, *subdue, conquer*.
- dōmŭs**, **ŭs** and **i** [see 97], *house*, **dōmī**, *at home*; **dōmŭm**, *home*,

homeward; **dōmō**, *from home*.

DOME.

dūbītātio, **ōnīs**, f. (*dubīto waver in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation*.

dūbiūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *doubtful*. **DUBIOUS.**

dūcentī, **ae**, **ā**, num. adj. pl. (*duo two, centum hundred*), *two hundred*.

dūco, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm**, *lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off*. **DUCT**, **AQUEDUCT**.

dulcīs, **dulcē**, *sweet, pleasant*. **DULCET.**

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until*.

Dumnōrix, **Dumnōrīgīs**, m., *one of the Aedui*.

duō, **ae**, **ō**, num. adj. [see 108], *two*.

dux, **dūcīs**, m. and f., *leader, guide; commander, general*.

E.

ēdūco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*edūco bring up a child*), **EDUCATE**. **EDUCATION.**

ē-dūco, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm** (*ex out, duco lead*), *lead out, lead forth*. **EDUCE**, **EDUCATION.**

effēmīno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*ex denoting change of nature, femina woman*), *enervate*. **EFFEMINATE.**

ef-fīcio, **fīcērē**, **fēcī**, **fectūm** (*ex out, facio make*), **EFFECT**, *accomplish*.

ef-fundo, **fundērē**, **fūdī**, **fūsūm**

(*ex out, fundo pour*), *pour out, overflow*. **EFFUSION.**

Egēriā, **ae**, f., *a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa*.

ēgō, pers. pron. [see 112], *I*.

ē-grēdior, **grēdī**, **gressūs sūm** (*ex out, gradior go*), *go out, depart*. **EGRESS.**

ē-lābor, **lābī**, **lapsūs sūm** (*ex out, labor slip*), *glide away, escape*. **ELAPSE.**

ē-mīneo, **mīnērē**, **mīnuī** (*ex out, mineo jut*), *rise above; appear*. **EMINENT.**

ēmo, **ēmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**, *buy*.

ēnim, conj., *for*.

ē-nuncio, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*ex out of a place, nuncio carry a report*), *divulge, report*.

eō, **irē**, **ivī**, **itūm** [see 126], *go*.

eō, adv., *to that place, thither, there*; **eō** — **quō**, *the — the*.

ēquēs, **ēquītīs**, m. (*equus horse, eo go*), *rider, horseman; cavalryman*; pl., *cavalry*.

ēquestēr, **trīs**, **trē** (*eques horseman*), *of horsemen, of cavalry*. **EQUESTRIAN.**

ēquītātūs, **ūs**, m. (*equito to be a horseman*), *cavalry*.

ēquūs, **ī**, m., *horse*.

ē-rīpio, **rīpērē**, **rīpuī**, **reptūm** (*ex out, rapio tear*), *tear out or from, take from*.

ēt, conj., *and, even*; **ēt** — **ēt**, *both — and*.

ētiām, conj. (*et-jam*), *and also, also, even*.

et-si, conj., *even if, although.*

Etruriā, ae.f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-vertō, **vertērē**, **vertī**, **versūm** (ex out, verto turn), *turn out; overturn, destroy.*

ē-vōlo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex out, volo fly), *fly out, fly away.*

ex, **ē**, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV., VY., 1], *out of, from among; from; of.*

exemplūm, **ī**, n. (exīmo fr. ex out, emo take), **EXAMPLE.**

ex-eo, **irē**, **iī**, **itūm** (ex out, eo go), *go out, go forth, depart; pass., be gone.*

exercitatio, **ōnīs**, f. (exercito to exercise), *practice.*

exercitūs, **ūs**, m. (exerceo exercise), *army.* See **agmen**

ex-īgo, **īgērē**, **ēgī**, **actūm** (ex out, ago drive), *drive out, lead out, spend; aestas exacta est, the summer is gone. EXACTION.*

existīmo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *think, suppose; believe, imagine.*

exītiūm, **ī**, n. (exeo go out), *destruction, ruin.*

ex-ōro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, oro entreat), *move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.*

expēditūs, **ā**, **ūm** (expedio fr. ex away from, pes foot), *unincumbered, passable. EXPEDITIOUS.*

ex-plīco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex out, plīco fold), *unfold, explain, spread. EXPLICATION.*

explōrātōr, **ōrīs**, m. (explōro explore), *spy, scout.*

ex-pugno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, pugno fight), *take by assault; storm, capture.*

ex-specto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex very much, specto look for), **EXPECT**, *long for; wait. EXPECTATION.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond.*

ex-trāho, **trāhērē**, **traxī**, **trac-tūm** (ex out, traho draw), *draw out, EXTRACT. EXTRACTION.*

extrēmūs, **ā**, **ūm** [see 85], *furthest, most distant, EXTREME.*

ex-ūrō, **ūrērē**, **ussī**, **ustūm** (ex entirely, uro burn), *burn up.*

F.

fābūlā, ae, f. (fari to speak), *story, FABLE.*

fācilē, **fāciliūs**, **fācillīmē**, adv. (facilis easy), *easily, readily, without difficulty.*

fācilīs, **fācilē** (facio do, ilis denoting capability), *easy, practicable. FACILE.*

fācio, **fācērē**, **fēcī**, **factūm**, *do, make; incite, furnish; iter facēre, to march, to journey.*

factio, **factiōnīs**, f. (facio take part with one), **FACTION**, *political party.*

factūm, **ī**, n. (facio do), *deed, act.*

fācultās, **ātīs**, f. (facilis which see), *ability, opportunity. FACULTY.*

fāmīliā, ae, f. (*famulus servant*),
household, FAMILY.

fāmīliārītās, ātis, f. (*familiāris intimate*), intimacy, friendship,
FAMILIARITY.

fāmūlā, ae, f., maid, maid-ser-
vant.

fauce, abl., f. sing., throat; **fau-
cēs**, fauciūm, f. pl., throat.

Faustūlūs, ī, m., the shepherd
by whom Romulus and Remus
were brought up.

fāveo, fāvērē, fāvī, fautūm, fa-
vor, show favor.

fēlēs and **fēlis**, fēlis, f., cat.
FELINE.

fēlicītēr, adv. (*felix happy*), hap-
pily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. fēlicis, adj. (*feo pro-
duce*), happy, fortunate. FE-
LICITOUS.

fēmīnā, ae, f., female, woman.
FEMININE.

fērē, adv., almost, nearly.

fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm, bear,
bring, carry; endure.

fērūs, ā, ūm, wild, uncultivated;
fērā, ae, f., wild beast.

ferrūm, ī, n., iron; sword.

festūm, ī, n., FEAST.

fīdēs, fīdēi, f. (*fido trust*), faith,
confidence; pledge, promise;
protection. FIDELITY.

filiā, ae, f. [see 11], daughter.

filiūs, ī, m., son.

finio, finīrē, finīvī, finītūm
(*finis end*), end, FINISH.

finis, finīs, m., end, limit, boun-
dary; pl., territory. FINAL.

finītīmūs, ā, ūm (*finis boun-
dary*), neighboring; **finītīmī**,
ōrūm, m. pl., neighbors.

fio, fiērī, factūs sūm [see 126],
be made; become; occur, hap-
pen.

firmītēr, adv. (*firmus firm*), firm-
ly, securely.

flāgīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, demand.

flammā, ae, f., FLAME.

fleo, flērē, flēvī, flētūm, weep.

flens, gen. flentīs, weeping.

flōs, flōris, m., flower. FLORAL
flūmēn, flūmīnis, n. (*fluo flow*),
river.

fluo, fluērē, fluxī, fluxūm, flow.

FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fōdio, fōdērē, fōdī, fossūm,
dig. FOSSIL.

foedūs, foedērīs, n., league,
treaty. FEDERAL.

formīdo, formīdīnis, f., fear,
terror.

formōsītās, ātis, f., beauty.

fortassē, adv. (*fors chance*), per-
haps.

fortē, adv. (*fors chance*), acci-
dentally, by chance.

fortīs, fortē, brave, bold, coura-
geous, valiant; strong.

fortītēr, fortīūs, fortissīmē, adv.
(*fortis brave*), bravely, valiantly.

fortūnā, ae, f., FORTUNE.

fōrūm, ī, n., market-place; FO-
RUM; court of justice.

fossā, ae, f. (*fodio dig*), ditch,
trench.

frātēr, frātrīs, m., brother. FRA-
TERNAL.

frīgūs, frīgōrīs, n., cold, frost.

frūmentāriūs, ā, ūm (frumentum corn), of corn; res frumentaria, supplies.

frūmentūm, ī, n., corn, grain.

fruor, fruī, fructūs sūm, enjoy
[see 104].

fūgā, ae, f., flight.

fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm, flee; escape. FUGITIVE.

fulmēn, fulmīnīs, n. (fulgeo flash), thunder-bolt, lightning. FULMINATE.

fūnūs, fūnērīs, n., funeral procession, burial; FUNERAL.

G.

Gābiniūs, ī, m., Aulus Gabinius, a Roman consul.

Galliā, ae, f., Gaul; it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul, and as Gallia transalpina, Gaul across the Alps, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as Gallia citerior, hither Gaul, and as Gallia cisalpina, Gaul this side the Alps, i. e. towards Rome.

gallīnā, ae, f., hen.

Gallūs, ī, m., a Gaul.

Garumnā, ae, f., a river of Gaul, the Garonne.

gēmīnūs, ā, ūm, double; gemīni filii, twin-sons.

gēnēr, gēnērī, m., son-in-law.

Gēnāvā, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.

gens, gentīs, f. (gigno beget), nation, tribe. GENTILE.

gēnūs, gēnērīs, n., birth, kind race.

Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., THE GERMANS.

gēro, gērērē, gessī, gestūm, bear, carry; carry on, wage; pass. happen, take place.

gigno, gignērē, gēnuī, gēnītūm, beget; bear; pass., be born.

glōriā, ae, f., GLORY, renown.

glōrior, āri, ātūs sūm (gloria glory), boast, GLORY.

grādūs, ūs, m. (gradior to step), step, stair. GRADE.

Graecūs, ā, ūm, GRECIAN, GREEK.

grātiā, ae, f. (gratus beloved, dear), favor; influence, popularity; GRACE: pl., thanks.

grātūlor, āri, ātūs sūm, CONGRATULATE.

grāvīs, grāvē, heavy, burdensome; GRIEVOUS, painful, severe. GRIEF.

grāvītēr, grāviūs, grāvissīmē, adv. (gravis heavy), heavily; grievously, severely.

grūs, gruīs, m. and f., crane (a bird).

H.

hābeo, ēre, uī, itūm, HAVE, hold; regard, consider; deliver.

Harūdēs, ūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hastā, ae, f., spear, lance.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means.

haedūs and **hoedūs**, ī, m., kid, a young goat.

Helvētiī, ōrūm, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētiūs, ā, ūm, of the Helvetii.

herbīdūs, ā, ūm (herba grass), grassy.

hibernā, ōrūm, n. pl. (hiems winter), winter-quarters; [properly an adjective with castra understood.] HIBERNATE.

hic, haec, hōc, this; pl., these [see 113].

hic, adv. (hic this), here, in this place.

hiēmo, āre, āvī, ātūm (hiems winter), pass the winter.

hinc, adv. (hic this), hence, from this place.

Hispaniā, ae, f., SPAIN.

hōdiē, adv. (contracted fr. hoc and die, on this day), to-day.

hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. and f., human being, person, man. [See LN.

XXV., NOTE 1.]

hōnōr, hōnōrīs, m., HONOR.

hōrā, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiī, ōrum, m. pl., three Ro-

man brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, ārī, ātūs sūm, EXHORT, urge. HORTATORY.

hospitiūm, ī, n. (hospes guest), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostīs, hostīs, m. and f., enemy, public enemy; [inimicus is a personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this place.

hūmānitās, ātīs, f. (humanus of or belonging to man), HUMANITY, refinement, culture.

I.

ibī, adv. (is), there, in that place; then.

ico, icērē, icī, ictūm, strike; foedus icere, to ratify or make a treaty. ICTUS.

idem, eādem, idem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 113].

idōneūs, ā, ūm, fit, suitable.

igītūr, conj., therefore.

ignīs, īs, m., fire.

illē, illā, illūd, that, he; pl., those.

immēritūs, ā, ūm (in negative, meritus deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

immortālīs, immortalē (in negative, mortālīs mortal), IMMORTAL.

immortālītās, ātīs, f. (immortālīs immortal), IMMORTALITY.

impēdimentūm, ī, n. (impedio fr. in in the way of, pedes feet),

- hindrance*. pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [*sarcinae* are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.
- im-pendeo, pendēre**, no perf. nor sup. (in *over*, *pendeo hang*), *overhang*; IMPEND.
- impērātōr, ōrīs**, m. (*impero command*), *commander-in-chief, general*.
- impērītūs, ā, ūm** (in *negative*, *perītus skilled*), *unskilled, inexperienced*.
- impēriūm, ī**, n. (*impero command*), *command; government*; EMPIRE, *supreme power*.
- impēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *upon*, *paro put*), *give orders, order; command; rule*.
- impētūs, ūs**, m., *attack, assault*. IMPETUS.
- im-plōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm**, *beseech, entreat*, IMPLORE.
- im-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm** (in *upon*, *pono place*), *place upon; levy upon*. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.
- im-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *into*, *porto bring*), *bring into*, IMPORT.
- in**, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., *into, to, towards, against*; w. abl., *in, on, upon, among*.
- inānīs, inānē**, *empty; vain, ineffectual*.
- incendo, incendērē, incendi, incensūm**, *set on fire, burn*. INCENDIARY.
- inchoo, ārē, āvī, ātūm**, *begin*.
- in-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī** (in *into*, *cado full*), *fall into or upon; chance to meet with*. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.
- in-cīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *with-out* additional force, *cito put in quick motion*), *instigate, encourage*; INCITE.
- in-cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm** (in *in*, *colo dwell*), *inhabit, dwell*.
- incolūmīs, ē**, *unhurt, safe*.
- incommōdūm, ī**, (*incommōdus fr. in negative, commōdus convenient*), *inconvenience, misfortune, defeat*.
- incrēdībīlīs, ē** (in *negative*, *credo believe*, *bilis denoting capability*), INCREDIBLE; *extraordinary*.
- incursio, ōnīs**, f. (*incurro fr. in into. against; curro run*), *attack*; INCURSION.
- in-cūso, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *against*, *causa cause*), *censure, blame*.
- in-dīco, dīcērē, dixī, dictūm** (in *among*, *dico speak*), *declare, proclaim*.
- indignūs, ā, ūm** (in *negative*, *dignus worthy*), *unworthy*.
- indōlēs, īs**, f., *disposition, nature*.
- in-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm** (in *into*, *duco lead*), *lead into*; INDUCE.
- indulgeo, indulgērē, indulī, indultūm**, *favor, show favor*; INDULGE.

in-duo, **duērē**, **duī**, **dūtūm**, *put on, dress; clothe.*

inermis, **ē** (in *negative*, *arma arms*), *unarmed; defenceless.*

inferiōr, **inferiūs**, *lower.* **INFERIOR** [see 85].

in-fēro, **in-ferrē**, **in-tūlī**, **illātūm** (in *into, upon, fero bring*), *bring into or upon, make upon.* **INFER**, **INFERENCE.**

in-fluo, **fluērē**, **fluxī**, **fluxūm** (in *into, fluo flow*), *flow into, empty.* **INFLUENCE**, **INFLUX.**

in-frendeo, **frendērē**, *gnash with the teeth.*

ingens, *gen. ingentis, vast, enormous, large.*

in-haereo, **haerērē**, **haesī**, **haesūm** (in *to, in; haereo stick*), *stick or cleave to or in.*

in-hio, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (in *for, hio gape*), *gape for, desire.*

inimicūs, **ā**, **ūm** (in *negative, amicus friendly*), *unfriendly, hostile; INIMICAL.* See **hostis.**

inītiūm, **ī**, *n. (ineo fr. in upon, eo enter), beginning.* **INITIAL.**

in-jicio, **jicērē**, **jēcī**, **jectūm** (in *into, jacio throw*), *throw into; inspire, infuse.* **INJECT.**

injūriā, **ae**, *f. (injurius fr. in negative, jus right), INJURY, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.*

in-nascor, **nascī**, **natūs sūm** (in *in, nascor be born*), *spring up in.*

inōpiā, **ae**, *f. (inōpes fr. in negative, opes resources), want, scarcity.*

inquam and **inquio**, *defective verb, say.*

insīdiae, **ārūm**, *f. pl., treachery, deceit.* **INSIDIOUS.**

insignis, **insignē** (in *upon, signum mark*), *remarkable, extraordinary; insignē, is, n., sign.*

in-stituo, **stītuērē**, **stītui**, **stītūtūm**, *appoint, INSTITUTE; train up, instruct.*

institūtūm, **ī**, *n., custom; INSTITUTION.*

in-struo, **struērē**, **struxī**, **structūm** (in *without additional force, struo arrange*), *arrange, form, draw up.* **INSTRUCT**, **INSTRUCTIVE**, **INSTRUCTION.**

intel-ligo (**lēgo**), **līgērē**, **lexī**, **lectūm** (inter *between, lego choose*), *understand, know.* **INTELLIGENT.**

intēr, *prep. w. acc., between, among.*

inter-cēdo, **cēdērē**, **cessī**, **cessūm** (inter *between, cedo go*), *intervene.* **INTERCEDE**, **INTERCESSION.**

inter-cīpio, **cīpērē**, **cēpī**, **ceptūm** (inter *between, capio take*), *usurp; take away fraudulently; INTERCEPT.*

inter-ficio, **fīcērē**, **fēcī**, **fectūm** (inter *between, facio make*), *kill, slay.*

inter-īmo, **īmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**, *kill, put to death.*

internēcio, **ōnīs**, *f. (internēco fr. inter completely, neco kill), slaughter.*

interregnūm, *ī*, n. (inter between, regnum reign), **INTERREGNUM**.

inter-sūm, *essē*, *fuī* (inter between, sum be), be between, intervene.

intervallūm, *ī*, n. (inter between, vallum rampart), **INTERVAL**, distance.

intro, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, enter.

in-tueor, *tuērī*, *tuītūs sūm* (in upon, at; tueor look), look at or upon.

intūs, adv., within.

invidiā, *ae*, f. (invideo look askance at), **ENVY**, hatred.

invītūs, *ā*, *ūm*, unwilling; *sē in-vīto*, against his will.

ipsē, *ipsā*, *ipsūm* [see 113], self; himself, herself, itself; very; **ipse-rex**, the very king.

irrētio, *irē*, *ivī*, *itūm* (in in, rete net), entangle, ensnare.

ir-rīdeo, *rīdērē*, *rīsī*, *rīsūm* (in at, rideo laugh), laugh at, deride.

irrito, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, provoke, incite, **IRRITATE**. **IRRITATION**.

is, *eā*, *īd*, he, her, it; this; that [see 113].

Isocrātēs, *is*, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.

itā, adv. (is), so, thus, in this manner, as follows.

Itāliā, *ae*, f., **ITALY**.

Itālūs, *ā*, *ūm*, **Italian**.

itā-quē, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

itēm, adv. (is), in like manner, likewise.

itēr, *itīnērīs*, n. (eo go), journey;

march; way, road, route; **iter facere**, to march. **ITINERANT**.

itērūm, adv. (is), again, a second time.

J.

jāceo, *ērē*, *uī*, *jācītūm*, lie.

jācio, *jācērē*, *jēcī*, *jactūm*, throw, hurl, cast.

jām, adv., now, already.

Jānicūlūm, *ī*, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

jūbeo, *jūbērē*, *jussī*, *jussūm*, command, order.

jūdiciūm, *ī*, n., (judex judge), judgment; trial; sentence; decision. **JUDICIAL**.

jūdīco, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (jus law, dico point out), **JUDGE**; determine, conclude; think. **ADJUDICATE**.

jūgūm, *ī*, n. (jungo join), yoke; ridge, summit: in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentūm, *ī*, n., beast of burden as a horse or an ox.

Juppīter and **Jūpīter**, **Jōvis**, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūrā, *ae*, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.

jūs, jūris, n., *right, law*. JURIST.
jūs-jūrandūm, jūris-jūrandī, n.,
oath [see 110].

jussū, m. abl. (jubeo *command*),
by command.

justūs, ā, ūm (jus *law*, suffix tus
denoting *fulness*), JUST, *right*.

jūvo, jūvārē, jūvī, jūtūm, *help*,
aid, assist. AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Ro-
man praenomen.

Lābiēnūs, ī, m., one of Caesar's
lieutenants in the Gallic war.

lābōr, lābōris, m., LABOR, *toil*.

lacrimā, ae, f., *tear*.

lācūs, ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, ārī, ātūs sūm (laetus
joyful), *rejoice, exult*.

laetūs, ā, ūm, *joyful*.

lānio, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *tear in*
pieces.

lāpīs, lāpīdīs, m., *stone*. LAPID-
ARY.

lāqueūs, ī, m., *noose, snare*.

Lārentiā, ae, f. See *Acca*.

largitio, ōnīs, f. (largior *give*
bountifully), *liberality*.

lātē, adv. (latus *broad*), *widely*,
extensively.

Lātīnūs, ī, m., an ancient king of
the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latro, latrōnīs, m., *robber*.

latro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *bark, bark*
at.

lātūs, lātērīs, n., *side; flank*.
LATERAL.

lātūs, ā, ūm, *broad, wide; large*,
spacious. LAT-ITUDE.

Lāvīniā, ae, f., daughter of Lati-
nus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lāvīniūm, ī, n., a city in Italy
built by Aenēas.

lēgātio, ōnīs, f. (lego *send on*
an embassy), *embassy*. LEGA-
TION.

lēgātūs, ī, m. (lego *send as a rep-*
resentative), *ambassador, envoy*,
LEGATE; *lieutenant*.

lēgio, lēgiōnīs, f. (lego *levy*),
LEGION, a body of infantry va-
rying in number from 4000 to
6000, and generally accompa-
nied by about 300 cavalymen.

lēgo, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm,
choose.

Lēmānūs, ī, m., Lake Lemān or
Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitas, ātis, f., *smoothness*.

leo, leōnīs, m., LION.

lētālīs, ē (letum *death*; suffix
alis, *belonging to*), *fatal, deadly*.

lēvītās, ātis, f. (lēvis *smooth*),
smoothness.

lēvītās, ātis, f. (lēvis *light*),
lightness. LEVITY.

lex, lēgis, f., *law*. LEGAL.

libēr, libērā, libērūm, *free*.

libērālītās, ātis, f. (liberālis fr.
liber *free*), LIBERALITY, *gen-*
erosity.

libērē, libērīūs, adv. (liber *free*),
freely, unreservedly.

libērī, ōrūm, m. pl., *children*.

libēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (liber
free), *to free*, LIBERATE.

liceor, liceři, licitūs sūm, bid
at an auction.

licēt, licēre, licuit or licitūm
est, it is permitted, allowed; one
may [see 128 and LN. LXIX.,
Examples 2-5].

licēt, although.

Lingōnēs, ūm, m. pl, a people
in Northeastern Gaul.

linguā, ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE.
LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Lisoūs, ī, m., a magistrate among
the Aedui.

litterā and lītērā, ae, f. (lino
besmear), LETTER of the alpha-
bet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERA-
TURE.

lōcūs, ī, m. [pl. loci and loca],
place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiūs, longissimē, adv.
(longus long), far, by far; often
used to strengthen superla-
tives.

longissimē, adv., very far.

longitūdo, inīs, f. (longus long),
length. LONGITUDE.

longūs, ā, ūm, long.

lōquor, lōqui, lōcūtūs sūm,
speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman prae-
nomen.

Lūcrētiā, ae, f., a Roman matron,
wife of Collatinus.

lūdūs, ī, m., play, game.

lūpā, ae, f., she-wolf.

lūpūs, ī, m., wolf.

lūstro, āre, āvī, ātūm, review.

lux, lūcis, f. (luceo shine), light.

lŷrā, ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a
Roman praenomen.

M., abbreviation of Mānius, a
Roman praenomen.

māgis, maxīmē, adv., more, rather.

māgistrātūs, ūs, m. (magister
fr. mag-, root of **magnus,**
signifying **to be great), magis-**
trate.

magnitūdo, inīs, f. (magnus
great), size, MAGNITUDE.

magnūs, ā, ūm, great, large, big,
mighty. MAGNI-

mājestās ātis, f., MAJESTY,
dignity.

mājōr, mājūs, gen. mājōris
(comp. of magnus), larger,
greater, bigger; mājōrēs, ūm,
m. pl., ancestors. MAJOR.

mālē, pējūs, pessimē, adv., bad-
ly, ill, wickedly.

mālē-dīco, dicēre, dīxī, dictūm
(male ill, dico speak), speak ill
of, revile, rail at; [with dat.]
MALEDICTION.

mālēficiūm, ī, n. [maleficus do-
ing evil), mischief, damage.

mālēficiūs, ā, ūm (male wicked-
ly, facio do), wicked; mālēfi-
cūs, ī, m., an evil-doer.

mālo, mallē, māluī (magis more,
volo be willing), be more willing,
choose rather, prefer [see 125].

mālūs, ā, ūm, bad, wicked, evil,
destructive.

māneo, mănērē, mansī, man-
sūm, stay, RE-MAIN.

mandātūm, ī, n. (mando fr. manus *hand*, do *put*; *put in one's hand*), *charge, order, command*.

MANDATE.

mānūs, ūs, f., *hand*; *force of soldiers*. **MANUFACTURE**.

Maniūs, ī, m. See **M'**.

Marciūs, ī, m., a Roman name.

Marcūs, ī, m. See **M**.

mārē, mārīs, n., *sea*.

mārītūs, ī, m. (*marīta wife*), *belonging to a wife, husband*.

Mars, **Martīs**, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.

MARTIAL.

massā, ae, f., *MASS, lump*.

māter, mātīs, f., *MOTHER*; *matron*.

mātrīmōnium, ī, n. (*mater mother*), *marriage*; *in matrimonium dare, to give in marriage*; *in matrimonium ducere, to marry*. **MATRIMONY**.

Matrōna, ae, m., a river in Gaul, *the modern Marne*.

mātūrē, adv. (*matūrus ripe*), *early, soon*.

mātūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *hasten, make haste*.

mātūrūs, ā, ūm, *ripe, MATURE*.

mēdiocrītēr, adv. (*mediocris fr. medius denoting a middle state*), *moderately*; *non mediocrīter, exceedingly*.

mēdiūs, ā, ūm, *in the middle or midst*; *in the middle of*; *middle, central*.

mēl, mellīs, n., *honey*. **MELLI-FLUENT**.

mēliōr, mēliūs, gen. mēliōrīs (comp. of bonus), *better*.

mēmīnī, mēmīnissē, *remember* [see 127].

mēmōr, gen. mēmōrīs, *mindful of, mindful*.

mēmōriā, ae, f. (*memor mindful of*), *MEMORY, recollection, remembrance*.

mens, mentīs, f., *mind*. See **ānimus**. **MENTAL**.

mensīs, mensīs, m., *month*.

mercātōr, ōrīs, m. (*mercōr to trade*), *trader, MERCHANT*.

mercēs, mercēdīs, f., *wages, hire, reward, price*.

mēreo, ērē, uī, ītūm, *deserve, acquire*.

mērītūm, ī, n., *desert*. **MERIT**.

Messālā, ae, m., a Roman name.

mētior, mētīrī, mensūs sūm, *MEASURE, deal out*.

Mettiūs, ī, m., *Mettius Fufetius*, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meūs, ā, ūm, *my, mine*.

mīlēs, mīlītīs, m., *soldier*.

mīlītārīs, ē (*miles soldier, aris belonging to*), *MILITARY*; *res mīlītārīs, military science*.

millē, pl. mīlia, mīliūm, *thousand* [see 108].

mīlviūs, ī, m., *kite (a bird)*.

mīnīmē [*parvē, mīnūs, mīnīmē*], adv., *least, by no means*.

mīnīmūs, ā, ūm, *least* [see 85].

mīnōr, mīnūs, *smaller, less* [see 85]; *minor nātu, younger*.

mīnuo, **mīnuērē**, **mīnuī**, **mīnūtūm**, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.
mīnūs, adv. *less*. See **minīme**.
mīror, **ārī**, **ātūs sūm**, AD-MIRE;
wonder at.
mīrūs, **ā**, **ūm** (*miror wonder at*),
wonderful.
mīsēr, **mīsērā**, **mīsērūm**, *wretched, pitiable, lamentable*, MISER-
 ABLE.
mitto, **mittērē**, **mīsī**, **missūm**,
send.
moeniā, **moeniūm**, n. pl., *walls*
of a city.
mollio, **irē**, **ivī**, **itūm** (*mollis*
soft), *soften, subdue*.
mōneo, **ērē**, **uī**, **itūm**, *remind*;
advise, AD-MONISH.
mons, **montīs**, m., MOUNTAIN,
 MOUNT.
monstro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*mon-*
strum a divine omen), *show,*
point out. DE-MONSTRATE.
morbūs, **ī**, m., *disease*. MORBID.
mōrior, **mōrī** and **mōrīrī**, **mor-**
tuūs sūm, *die*.
mōror, **ārī**, **ātūs sūm**, *tarry, de-*
lay, hinder.
mors, **mortīs**, f., *death*. MORTAL.
mōs, **mōrīs**, m., *custom, manner*;
usage; pl., *character*. MORAL.
mōveo, **mōvērē**, **mōvī**, **mōtūm**,
 MOVE; *excite*: **castra movēre**,
to break up camp.
mūlīēr, **mūlīērīs**, f., *woman*.
multitūdo, **inīs**, f. (*multus*
much), MULTITUDE.
multūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *much, many a*;
 pl. *many*. MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, **irē**, **ivī**, **itūm** (*moenia*
wall, rampart), *fortify*.
mūnītio, **ōnīs**, f. (*munio fortify*),
fortification. MUNITION.
mūnūs, **mūnērīs**, n., *gift, reward*.
 RE-MUNER-ATE.
mūs, **mūrīs**, m., *mouse*.
musculūs, m. (*mus*), *a little*
mouse.

N.

nām, conj., *for*.
nascor, **nascī**, **nātūs sūm**, *be*
born. NASCENT.
nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth*; **mi-**
nor natu, *younger*.
nātūrā, ae, f. (*nascor be born*),
 NATURE.
nātūs, **ā**, **ūm** (*nascor be born*),
old.
nāvīs, **nāvīs**, f., *ship*. NAV-AL,
 NAVI-GATE.
nē, adv., *not*; conj., *that not*; *that*.
nē, interrog. particle; is appended
 to first word of the question and
 asks for information.
nēc. See **nēquē**.
nēco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *kill, put to*
death.
nēgo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *deny, re-*
fuse. NEGATION.
nēgōtiūm, **ī**, n. (*nec not, otium*
leisure), *business*; **quid negō**
ti? *what business?* NEGOTI-
 ATE.
nēmo, **nēmīnīs**, m. and f. (*ne*
not, homo a man), *no one, no*
body.

něpōs, něpōtīs, m., grandson.

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnūs, ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nēquāquām, adv., by no means.

něquě, nēc, conj., and not; něquě — něquě, neither — nor.

nervūs, ī, m., NERVE, vigor, energy.

nescio, ĩrě, ĩvī and ĩī, ĩtūm (ne not, scio know), not know.

neutěr, neutrā, neutrūm (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see 24]. NEUTER.

nīhīl, n. indecl., nothing.

nīhīlō mīnūs, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nīhīlūm, ī, n., nothing.

nīsī, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nītor, nītī, nīsūs or nixus sūm, strive, endeavor.

nōbīlīs, nōbīlē (nosco know, bilis denoting capability), well known, NOBLE, of high rank.

nōbīlītās, ātīs, f. (nobīlis noble), NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollě, nōluī (non not, volo willing), be unwilling.

nōměn, nōmīnīs, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., not.

nonně, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

non-nullūs, ā, ūm, some one; nonnullī, ōrūm, m. pl., several persons.

Norēiā, ae, f., a town in Noricum.

Noricūs, ā, ūm, of Noricum, a

country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].

nostěr, nostrā, nostrūm, our, ours.

nōto, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nota, a mark), mark. NOTE, NOTATION.

Noviodūnūm, ī, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

nōvūs, ā, ūm, new, strange; recent, fresh; novae res, revolution; agmen novissimum, the rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctīs, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbīs, f., cloud.

nūbo, nūbērě, nupsī, nuptūm, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdūs, ā, ūm, naked, bare; NUDE.

nullūs, ā, ūm (ne not, ullus any one), no, none, not any one.

nūm, whether; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Nūma, ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūmērūs, ī, m., NUMBER.

Nūmītōr, ōrīs, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., now.

nuncio, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nuncius messenger), AN-NOUNCE, report.

nuncūpo, ārě, āvī, ātūm. to name.

nunquām and numquām, adv. (ne not, unquam ever), never.

nūpěr, adv. (novus new), newly, recently.

nutrio, ĩrě, ĩvī, ĩtūm, nourish.

NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphă, ae, f., a *nymph*; the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*.

obēdio, **īrē**, **īvī**, **ītūm** (ob without any additional force, *audio listen to*), *listen to, obey; be subject to*. OBEDIENT.

ob-eo, **īrē**, **īvī** and **īī**, **ītūm** (ob towards, *eo go*), *die*.

ob-erro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob about, *erro wander*), *wander about, wander*.

ob-jicio, **jicērē**, **jēcī**, **jectūm** (ob before, *ai; jacio throw*), *throw before, at, or against; throw up*. OBJECT, OBJECTION.

oblīviscor, **oblīviscī**, **oblītūs sūm**, *forget*.

ob-ruo, **ruērē**, **ruī**, **rūtūm** (ob without additional force, *ruo cast down with violence*), *overwhelm; cover*.

ob-secro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob on account of, *sacra sacrifices*), *beseech, implore*.

obsēs, **obsīdīs**, m. (*obsideo stay*), *hostage*.

ob-testor, **ārī**, **ātūs sūm** (ob with no additional force, *testor bear witness*), *conjure, beseech*.

ob-tīneo, **tīnērē**, **tīnuī**, **tentūm** (ob with no additional force, *teneo hold*), *hold, OBTAIN, possess*.

obviām, adv., *in the way; obviam īrē* or *fiēri*, *to meet*.

occāsūs, **ūs**, m. (*occīdo fall*), *going down; solis occāsu*, *at sunset*.

oc-cīdo, **cīdērē**, **cīdī**, **cīsūm** (ob against, *caedo cut, strike*), *kill, slay*.

oc-culto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *hide, cōnceal*. OCCULT.

oc-cūpo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob with no additional force, *capio take*), *seize, take possession of, OCCUPY. OCCUPATION*.

oc-curro, **currērē**, **cūcurrī** and **currī**, **cursūm** (ob towards, *curro run*), *meet*. OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.

Oceānūs, **ī**, m., OCEAN.

Ocēlūm, **ī**, n., a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *eighth*. OCTAVE.

octō-dēcīm, num. adj., *eighteen*.

octō-gintā, num. adj., *eighty*.

ōcūlūs, **ī**, m., *eye*. OCULIST.

ōdī, **ōdissē**, *hate* [see 127].

of-fendo, **fendērē**, **fendī**, **fensūm**, OFFEND, *wound*. OFFENCE.

of-fēro, **of-fērrē**, **ob-tūlī**, **oblātūm** (ob towards, *fero bring*), OFFER, *present*.

officiūm, **ī**, n. (*opes aid, facio render*), *service, duty; obedience, allegiance*. OFFICE.

omnīnō, adv. (*omnis all*), *altogether, at all*.

omnis, omně, *all, every, the whole*.

OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT,
OMNI-PRESENT.

ōnūs, ōněrīs, n., *load, burden; weight; size*. ONEROUS.

ōpīs, ōpēm, ōpě [nom., dat., and
voc. sing. not used; pl. entire];
pl., **ōpēs, ōpūm, ōpībūs**, etc.;
f., *power; means, resources*.

ōportět, ōportěrě, ōportuīt, *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought* [see 128 and LN. LXIX.,
Examples 6–8].

oppīdūm, ī, n., *town, walled town*.

op-pugno, ārě, āvī, ātūm (*ob against, pugno fight*), *attack, besiege, assault*.

optio, ōnīs, f. (*opto choose*),
choice, OPTION.

ōpīs, ōpěrīs, n., *work, labor*.

ōrātio, ōrātiōnīs, f. (*oro speak*),
speech, harangue; ORATION.

ōrātōr, ōrātōrīs, m. (*oro plead*),
ORATOR.

ordīno, ārě, āvī, ātūm (*ordo arranging*), *arrange, order*.

Orgētōrix, īgīs, m., *the noblest and richest among the Helvetii*.

ōriens, gen. **ōrientīs** (*part. fr. orior*), *rising. ORIENT*.

ōrior, ōrīrī, ortūs sūm, *rise, arise, begin*.

ornāmentūm, ī, n. (*orno adorn*),
ORNAMENT, *distinction*.

ōro, ārě, āvī, ātūm (*os mouth*),
beseech, beg; implore, pray.

ōs, ōrīs, n., *mouth; face. ORAL*.

ōs, ossīs, n., *bone. OSSI-FY*.

os-tendo, tenděrě, tendī, tentūm (*ob before, tendo spread*),
show, point out, exhibit. OSTENSIBLE.

Ostiā, ae, f., *a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius*.

ostiūm, ī, n., *mouth of a river*.

ōvūm, ī, n., *egg. OVAL*.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

pābūlātio, ōnīs, f., *foraging*.

pābūlūm, ī, n. (*pasco feed*),
food.

pāco, ārě, āvī, ātūm (*pax peace*),
PACIFY; *subdue*.

paeně, adv., *almost, nearly*.

pāgūs, ī, m., *district, canton*.

pār, gen. **pārīs**, *equal, like. PAR*.

pārātūs, ā, ūm (*part. of paro prepare*), PRE-PARED, *ready*.

parco, parcěrě, pēpercī and parsī, parcītūm and parsūm (*parcus spare*), *to spare*.

pārio, pārěrě, pēpērī, pārītūm and partūm, *bear, bring forth; ovum parere, to lay an egg*.

pars, partīs, f., PART, *share; side; direction*.

parvūs, ā, ūm [comp., **minor**, superl., **minīmus**], *small, little, insignificant*.

pascor, pascī, pastūs sūm, *feed, graze*.

passūs, ūs, m. (*pando stretch out the feet*), *step*, PACE; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastōr, pastōris, m. (*pasco feed*), *shepherd*. PASTOR.

pātē-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (*pateo be open, facio make*), *make open, open*.

pāter, patrīs, m., FATHER.

pāternūs, ā, ūm (*pater father*), PATERNAL.

pātiōr, pātī, passūs sūm, let, allow; suffer. PASSION, PASSIVE.

pātria, ae, f. (*pater father*), *native land, fatherland*. PATRIAL.

paucī, ae, ā, adj. pl., *few*.

paulūs, ā, ūm, little; paulo, n. abl. sing., *by a little, little*.

pāvo, ōnīs, m. and f., *peacock*.

pax, pācis, f., PEACE. PACIFY.

pellīs, pellīs, f., *skin*.

pello, pellērē, pēpūlī, pulsūm, drive out or away, banish; rout. RE-PULSE.

pennā, ae, f., *feather*. PEN.

pēr, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by*.

per-cūtio, cūtērē, cussī, cussūm (*per through, quatio strike*), *strike through, strike*. PERCUSSION.

per-do, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (*per through, do put*), *lose*. PERDITION.

per-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, duc-tūm (*per through, duco lead*),

lead through or to, conduct; fossam perducere, to extend or make a trench.

per-fācīlis, ē (*per very, facīlis easy*), *very easy*.

per-ficio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*per completely, facio make*), *accomplish*. PERFECTION.

perfidīā, ae, f. (*perfidus one who breaks his promise*), PERFIDY.

pēricūlōsūs, ā, ūm (*pericūlum danger; suffix ōsus full of*), *dangerous*.

pēricūlūm, ī, n., *danger, risk*, PERIL.

pērītūs, ā, ūm, skilful, experienced.

per-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm (*per through, mitto let go*), PERMIT, *allow*. PERMISSION.

per-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-tūm (*per completely, moveo move*), *prevail upon*.

pernīciēs, pernīciēī, f. (*pernēco fr. per completely, neco kill*), *ruin, destruction*. PERNICIOUS.

perpaucī, ae, ā (*per very, pauci few*), *very few*.

per-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (*per perseveringly, sequor follow*), *pursue*. PERSECUTE.

per-sēvēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*per-sevērus very strict*), PERSEVERE, *continue*.

per-suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsūm (*per thoroughly, suadeo advise*), PERSUADE, *prevail upon*. PERSUASION.

per-terreo, ēřě, uī, itūm (per thoroughly, terreo frighten), thoroughly frighten, terrify.

per-tīneo, tīnērě, tīnuī, tentūm (per thoroughly, teneo hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; PERTAIN, belong.

per-turbo, āřě, āvī, ātūm (per thoroughly, turbo disturb), greatly disturb, DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-vēnio, vēnīřě, vēnī, ventūm (per quite through, venio come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.

pēs, pēdīs, m., foot. PEDAL.

pěto, pětěřě, pětivī and pětīi, pětītūm, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. PETITION.

pětūlantiā, ae, f. (petūlans saucy), sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.

pīleūs, ī, m., hat; cap.

pīlūm, ī, n., javelin.

Pīso, ōnīs, m., a Roman consul.

pistrīnūm, ī, n. (pistor miller), mill.

plāceo, plācērě, plācuī, plācītūm, PLEASE; plācět, impers., it pleases, it seems good.

plāgā, ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plebs, plēbīs, f., commons, common people.

plūrīmūs, ā, ūm [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūrīs [compar. of multus, see 85], more.

poenā, ae, f., punishment. PENAL.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicītūs sūm (insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer), promise.

pōno, pōnērě, pōsuī, pōsītūm, place, put; castra pōnērě, to pitch a camp. POSITION.

pons, pontis, m, bridge.

pōpūlātiō, ōnīs, f., ravaging.

pōpūlor, ārī, ātūs sūm (populus people), ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.

pōpūlūs, ī, m., PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.

portā, ae, f., gate. PORTAL.

por-tendo, tenděřě, tendī, tentūm, fortell, predict, presage; betoken; PORTEND.

porto, āřě, āvī, ātūm, carry, bear, TRANS-PORT. EX-PORT.

portōriūm, ī, n. (porto carry), duty paid on goods imported or exported.

posco, poscērě, pōposcī, no sup., demand.

possessio, ōnīs, f. (possideo possess), POSSESSION.

pos-sīdeo, sīdērě, sēdī, sessūm (potis powerful, sedeo sit), be master of; POSSESS.

pos-sūm, pos-sě, pot-uī (potis able, sum be), be able, can [see 68].

post, prep. w. acc., after.

posteā, adv. (post after, ea that), after that, afterwards.

post-eā-quām, after that, after.

postērūs, ā, ūm [comp., posterior; superl., postrēmus and postūmus], following, ensuing,

succeeding; **postero** *die, on the following day*; **postērī, ōrūm**, m. pl., *descendants*.

post-quām, conj., *after, as soon as*.

postrīdiē, adv. (*postero following, die on the day*), *on the following day*.

postūlo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *ask for, demand*.

pōtens, gen. **pōtentīs** (*possum be able*), *able, powerful, influential*. **POTENT**.

pōtestās, ātīs, f. (*potens able*), *ability, power; opportunity; ālicuī pōtestātēm fācērē, to give any one an opportunity*.

pōtior, pōtīrī, pōtītūs sūm (*potis able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of*.

pōtiūs, adv., *rather, sooner*.

prae-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*prae before, cedo go*), *surpass, excel*; **PRECEDE**. **PRECEDENCE, PRECEDENT**.

praecipīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*praiceps headlong*), *throw violently, throw*. **PRECIPITATE**.

praecipuē, adv. (*praecipuus fr. praecipio fr. prae before, capio take*), *especially, chiefly*.

prae-dīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*prae publicly, dico tell*), *proclaim, declare; boast*. **PREDICATE**.

prae-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (*prae before, fero bear*), **PREFER**.

prae-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*prae over, facio place*), *place over, put in command of*.

prae-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, misūm (*prae forward, mitto send*), *send forward*.

praemiūm, ī, n. (*prae beyond others, emo take*), *profit, reward*. **PREMIUM**.

prae-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm (*prae before, first; pono put*), *put before or first; prefer*.

PREPOSITION.

praesēpē, īs, n. (*praesepio, to fence in front*), *manger*.

praesīdiūm, ī, n. (*praesideo fr. prae before, sedeo sit*), *defence, protection; guard, garrison*.

prae-sto, stārē, stītī, stītūm and **stātūm** (*prae before, sto stand*), *stand before, excel; se praestāre, to show one's self*.

prae-sūm, essē, fuī (*prae over, sum be*), *be over, rule over, be in command of*.

praetēr, prep. w. acc. (*prae before and suffix ter*), *past, by; besides, except*.

praeter-eo, irē, ii, itūm (*praeter by, eo go*), *go by*. **PRETERIT**.

praeter-quām, adv., *except*.

praetōr, praetōrīs, m., *praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually*.

prātūm, ī, n., *meadow*.

prēcī, prēcēm, prēcē [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prēcēs, prēcūm**, etc., *request, prayer*.

prēmo, prēmērē, pressī, pres

sūm, PRESS, *press upon*. OP-PRESSION.

prētiūm, *i*, n., *worth, value, price*.

AP-PRECIATE.

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before*.

prīmo, adv. (*primus*), *at first*.

prīmūm, adv. (*primus*), *at first*; **quām prīmūm**, *as soon as possible*.

prīmūs, *ā*, *ūm* [see 85], *first*;

prīmūm (*agmēn*), *the van of an army*. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.

princeps, gen. **principis**, adj. (*primus first, capio take*), *first, chief*; **princeps**, *ipīs*, m., *chief, leader*. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

principātūs, *ūs*, m. (*princeps chief*), *first place; pre-eminence*; **principātum tenēre**, *to be at the head*.

priōr, **prius** [superl. **prīmūs**, see 85], *the former; first*.

Priscus, *i*, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

pristinūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *former*; PRISTINE.

priusquām, adv., *before*.

prīvātīm, adv. (*privus single*), *as a private citizen*.

prīvātūs, *ā*, *ūm* (part. of *privo deprive*), PRIVATE.

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of*.

prōbo, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (*probus good*), *show*; PROVE. PROBATION.

Prōcās, *ae*, m. See **Silvius**.

prō-cēdo, *cēdērē*, *cessī*, *cessūm*

(*pro forward, cedo go*), *go forth, PROCEED, advance*. PROCES-SION.

prōcūl, adv. (*procello drive forward*), *afar off, far*.

prō-cūro, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (*pro for, curo care*), *care for, take care of, manage*. PROCURE.

prōdīgiūm, *i*, n. (*pro beforehand, root dic point out*), PRODIGY.

proeliūm, *i*, n., *battle*.

prōfectio, *ōnīs*, f. (*proficiscor set out*), *departure*.

prō-ficiscor, *fīciscī*, *fectūs sūm* (*pro forwards, facio put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel*.

prō-fūgio, *fūgērē*, *fūgī*, *fūgītūm* (*pro before, fugio flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prō-hībeo, *hībērē*, *hībuī*, *hībītūm* (*pro in front, habeo hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from*; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION.

prō-jicio, *jīcērē*, *jēcī*, *jectūm* (*pro forward, jacio throw*), *throw forward, cast away*; **se prō-jīcērē**, *to throw one's self forward or down*. PROJECT.

prō-mōveo, *mōvērē*, *mōvī*, *mōtūm* (*pro forward, moveo move*), *move forward, advance*. PROMOTION.

prōpē, **prōpiūs**, **proxīmē**, adv., *near, almost*.

prōpēro, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (*propērus speedy*), *hasten*.

prōpinquūs, *i*, m. (*prope not far, hinc hence*), *relative*; **prōpin-**

quā, ae, f., *kinswoman*. PROPINQUITY.

prōpiōr, prōpiūs [superl. *proximus*, see 85], *nearer*.

prō-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm (prō *before*, pono *place*), *expose to view*; PROPOSE. PROPOSAL, PROPOSITION.

proptēr, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

proptēr-eā, adv., *for this reason*.

protēreā quōd, *because*.

prō-spīcio, spīcērē, spexī, spectūm (pro *forwards*, specio *look*), *look forwards*; *look out for*. PROSPECT, PROSPECTIVE.

prō-sūm, prōd-essē, prō-fui (pro(d) *for*, sum *be*), *be for*, *be useful*; *benefit*, *profit*.

prōvinciā, ae, f., *province*.

proximē, adv. [positive *prōpē*, compar. *prōpiūs*], *very near*, *very recently*, *last*.

proximūs, ā, ūm [see 85], *next*, *nearest*; *ensuing*, *last*. PROXIMITY, APPROXIMATE.

publicē, adv. (publicus fr. *populus* *people*), *in the name of the state*.

Publius, ī, m., a Roman name.

pūdōr, pūdōris, m. (pudeo *feel shame*), *shame*, *feeling of shame*.

puellā, ae, f., *girl*.

puēr, puērī, m., *boy*. PUER-ILE.

puērītia, ae, f. (puer *boy*), *boyhood*, *childhood*.

pugnā, ae, f., *battle*. PUGNACIOUS.

pugno, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *fight*.

pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm (polio *polish*), *beautiful*.

pūnio, irē, ivī, itūm (poena *punishment*), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ī, m. (pupūlus *a little boy*), PUPIL, *ward*.

pūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *think*, *believe*.

Pyrēnaeus, ā, ūm, *Pyrenean*;

Pyrēnaei montes, *the Pyrenees*.

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) *where*.

quādrāgēsīmūs, ā, ūm (quadraginta *forty*), *fortieth*.

quādrāgintā, num. adj. indecl. (quattuor *four*), *forty*.

quaero, quaerērē, quaesivī and quaesiī, quaesītūm, *see*, *ask*, IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUISTION.

quālīs, quālē, *of what sort*; *as*.

quām, conj. and adv., *than*; *as*.

quām-ob-rēm, adv., *on account of which thing*; *for which reason*; *wherefore*.

quam-quām, conj., *although*.

quamvis, conj. (quam *as*, vis *you will*), *as you will*; *however much*; *although*.

quantūs, ā, ūm, *how much*; *how great*; *as*; quantum boni, *how much good*.

quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and res), *for which thing*, *for which*.

quartūs, ā, ūm (quattuor *four*), *fourth*. QUART.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four*.
quē, conj., *and* [see LN. XXIII.,
 VY., 1].

quēror, **quērī**, **questūs sūm**,
complain. QUERULOUS.

quī, **quae**, **quōd**, rel. pron., *who*,
which, what; that [see 114].

quī, **quae**, **quōd** [interrog. pro-
 noun used adjectively, see 116],
which? what? what sort of a?
what kind of a?

quīd, *why?* [see LN. XCII.,
 NOTE 1].

quīdām, **quaedām**, **quoddām**
 or **quiddām**; gen. **cujusdām**;
 [indef. pron. declined like **quī**],
a certain.

quīdēm, adv., *indeed*; **ne** —
quīdem, *not — even*.

quīn, conj. (*qui by which, ne not*),
but that, that not.

quīndēcīm, num. adj. indecl.
 (*quinque five, decem ten*), *fif-
 teen*.

quīngentī, ae, ā (*quinque five*,
centum hundred), *five hundred*.

quīnī, ae, ā (*quinque five*), *five*
each.

quīs, **quae**, **quīd**, interrog. pron.,
who? what? [see 116].

quīs, indef. pronoun, *anybody*,
anything [see 116].

quisquām, **quaequām**, **quīd-
 quām** or **quicquām**; gen. **cu-
 jusquām**; [indef. pron. declined
 like **quis**], *any one, anything*,
any.

quō, adv., *that, in order that*.

quōd, conj., *because, that*.

quōmōdō, adv. (*qui what, mo-
 dus manner*), *in what manner*,
by what means, how.

quōquē, conj, *also*.

quōtīdiē, adv. (*quot every, dies*
day), *every day, daily*.

quūm and **cūm**, rel. adv., *when*,
as; conj., since; although;
quūm — **tūm**, *both — and*.

R.

rādix, **rādīcis**, f., *root*; **radix** or
radīces montis, *the foot of a*
mountain. RADISH.

rāpīnā, ae, f. (*rapio seize*), *plun-
 dering*; RAPINE.

rāpio, **rāpērē**, **rāpuī**, **raptūm**,
seize, plunder. RAPTURE.

raptōr, **ōrīs**, m. (*rapio seize*),
one who seizes; robber.

Raurācī, **ōrūm**, m., *a people in*
Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
of the Helvetii.

rēcens, gen. **rēcentīs**, RECENT,
fresh, new.

rē-cīpio, **cīpērē**, **cēpī**, **ceptūm**
 (*re back, capio take*), *take back*;
 RECEIVE; **se recipēre**, *to be-
 take one's self, withdraw*. RE-
 CEPTION.

red-do, **dērē**, **dīdī**, **dītūm** (*re(d)*
back again, do give), *return*.

RENDER, RENDITION.

rēd-eo, **īrē**, **īi**, **ītūm** (*re(d)* *back*,
eo go), *go back, return*.

rēd-īmo, **īmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**
 (*re(d)* *back, emo buy*), *buy back*,
release, ransom; purchase; hire,

- farm.* REDEEM, REDEMPTION.
- rědĭtio, ōnĭs, f.** (*redeo go back*), *going back, return.*
- rě-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxĭ, ductŭm** (*re back, duco lead*), *lead back, lead.* REDUCE, REDUCTION.
- rě-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlĭ, lātŭm** (*re back, fero bear*), *bear or bring back, restore.* REFER, RELATE.
- re-fluo, fluĕrĕ, no perf. nor sup.** (*re back, fluo flow*), *flow back.* REFLUENT, REFLUX.
- rĕgio, ōnĭs, f.,** REGION.
- rĕgiŭs, ā, ŭm** (*rex king*), *royal.*
- regno, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm** (*regnum rule*), *reign, rule.*
- regnŭm, ĭ, (rego to rule),** *royal power, sovereignty; government; kingdom.*
- rĕ-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jĕcĭ, jectŭm** (*re back, jacio throw*), *throw back, hurl back.* REJECT, REJECTION.
- rĕlĭgio, ōnĭs, f.,** RELIGION, *sanc-*
tity.
- rĕ-linquo, linquĕrĕ, lĭquĭ, lic-**
tŭm (*re behind, linquo leave*), *leave behind, leave; quit, abandon.* RELINQUISH.
- rĕlĭquŭs, ā, ŭm** (*relinquo let remain*), *remaining, rest of.*
- rĕ-māneo, mănĕrĕ, mansĭ, mansŭm** (*re behind, maneo stay*), *stay behind, REMAIN.*
- rĕmĭniscor, rĕmĭniscĭ, recall to mind, recollect.** REMINISCENCE.
- rĕ-mŏveo, mŏvĕrĕ, mŏvĭ, mŏ-**
tŭm (*re back, moveo move*),
REMOVE. REMOTE.
- Rĕmŭs, ĭ, m.,** twin brother of Romulus.
- rĕ-nuncio, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm** (*re back, nuncio bring word*), *report.* RENOUNCE.
- rĕpentĕ, adv. (repens sudden),** *suddenly.*
- rĕ-pĕrio, pĕrĭrĕ, pĕrĭ, pertŭm** (*re again, pario produce*), *find, discover.*
- rĕ-pŏno, pŏnĕrĕ, pŏsuĭ, pŏsĭ-**
tŭm (*re again, pono place*),
place again, restore. REPOSE.
- rĕs, rĕĭ, f.,** *thing, affair.*
- re-scindo, scindĕrĕ, scĭdĭ, scis-**
sŭm (*re away, scindo cut*), *cut away, destroy.* RESCIND.
- re-spondeo, spondĕrĕ, spondĭ, sponsŭm** (*re in return, spondeo promise*), *reply, answer.* RESPOND.
- responsŭm, ĭ, n. (respondeo re-**
ply), answer. RESPONSE.
- respublică, reĭpublicae, f. (res**
affair, publica belonging to the
people), REPUBLIC, *common-*
wealth [see 110].
- re-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuĭ, stĭ-**
tŭtŭm (*re again, statuo set up*), *restore.* RESTITUTION.
- rĕ-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnuĭ, tentŭm** (*re back, teneo hold*), *hold back, restrain, prevent.* RETENTION.
- rĕvĕrentiă, ae, f. (revereor stand**
in awe of), REVERENCE.
- rĕ-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertĭ, ver-**
sŭm and

rě-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm (re back, verito turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.
rě-voco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (re back, voco call), call back. REVOKE.
rex, rēgis, m., king. REGAL.
Rhea, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnūs, ī, m., the Rhine.
Rhōdānūs, ī, m., the Rhone.
rīpā, ae, f., bank (of a stream).
rixor, ārī, ātūs sūm (rixa quarrel), to quarrel.
rōgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask, demand, request.
Rōmā, ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm, Roman; Rōmānūs, ī, m., a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, ī, m., the founder and first king of Rome; Romūlus Silvius, a king of Alba.
rūpes, rūpis, f. (rumpo break), rock, cliff.

S.

Sābinī, ōrūm, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.
sācēr, sacrā, sacrūm, SACRED; **sacrā, ōrūm, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.**
sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f. (sacer sacred, do give), priest; priestess.
saepē, saepiūs, saepissīme, adv., often.
saepē-nūmēro, adv., oftentimes, frequently.

sālūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (salus greeting), greet, SALUTE. SALUTATION.
sanguīs, sanguīnīs, m., blood. SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.
Santōnēs, ūm and Santōnī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.
sāpientiā, ae, f. (sapiens wise), wisdom.
sarcinā, ae, f. (sarcio to patch), bundle; pl., baggage carried by soldiers. See impedimenta.
sātīs, adv., enough, sufficiently; used adjectively in the sense of sufficient.
sātīs-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (satis enough, facio do), do enough, SATISFY, give SATISFACTION.
Sāturniā, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.
Sāturnūs, ī, m. (sero sow), Saturn, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.
scēlūs, scēlērīs, n., crime, guilt, wickedness.
scio, scīrē, scīvī and sciī, scītūm, know, understand. SCIENCE.
scribo, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm, write. SCRIBE, DE-SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.
scūtūm, ī, n., a shield; [scutum was an oblong shield, made of wood, and covered with leather; clipeus, a round brazen shield.]
sēd, conj, but.
sēdēs, sēdis, f. (sedeo sit), seat;

- dwelling-place*; **sedes regni**, *seat of government*.
- Sĕgŭsiānī, ōrŭm**, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.
- sĕmĕl**, adv., *once*.
- sempĕr**, adv., *always, continually*.
- sĕnātŏr; ōrīs**, m. (*senex old*), SENATOR.
- sĕnātŭs, ūs**, m. (*senex old*), SENATE.
- sĕnī**, ae, ā (*sex six*), *six each*.
- sententiā**, ae, f. (*sentio think*), *opinion*. SENTENCE.
- septĕm**, num. adj. indecl., *seven*.
- septentriŏnĕs (septemtriŏnĕs), ūm**, m. pl., *the north*; **sub septentrionībus**, *towards the north*.
- septīmŭs, ā, ūm** (*septem seven*), *seventh*.
- Sĕquānā**, ae, m., a river of Gaul, *the modern Seine*.
- Sĕquānī, ōrŭm**, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequana.
- Sĕquānŭs, ā, ūm**, *of the Sequani*.
- sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcŭtŭs sŭm**, *follow; accompany*. SEQUENCE.
- sermo, sermŏnīs**, m., *discourse, conversation*. SERMON.
- servītus, ūtīs**, f. (*servus slave*), *slavery, bondage*.
- Serviŭs, ī**, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.
- servŭs, ī**, m., *slave*, SERVANT.
- sex**, num. adj. indecl., *six*.
- sī**, conj., *if; whether*; *see whether*.
- sic**, adv., *so, thus*.
- siccŭs, ā, ūm**, *dry*; **siccŭm, ī**, n., *dry land*.
- sic-ŭt and sic-ŭtī**, adv., *as; as if*.
- signīfīco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm** (*signum sign, facio make*), *mean*, SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.
- signŭm, ī**, n., SIGN, *mark*; SIGNAL.
- silvā**, ae, f., *woods, forest*. SILVAN.
- Silviā**, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
- Silviŭs, ī**, m., name of several kings of Alba; **Silvius Procas**, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.
- sīmīlīs, sīmīlē**, *like*, SIMILAR.
- sīn**, conj. (*si if, ne not*), *but if*.
- sīnĕ**, prep. w. abl., *without*.
- singŭlī**, ae, ā, SINGLE, *one by one; each*.
- sīnistĕr, sīnistrā, sinistrŭm**, *left*. SINISTER.
- sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī**, m., *father-in-law*.
- sŏciŭs, ī**, m., *ally*. AS-SOCI-ATE.
- sŏl, sŏlīs**, m., *sun*. SOLAR.
- sŏleo, sŏlĕrĕ, sŏlītŭs sŭm**, *be wont, be accustomed*.
- sŏlītŭdo, īnīs**, f. (*solus alone*), *desert; solitary place*; SOLITUDE.
- sŏlŭm**, adv. (*solus alone*), *only, alone*.
- sŏlŭm, ī**, n., *ground, soil*.
- sŏlŭs, ā, ūm**, *alone, only* [see 24].
- sŏnītŭs, ūs**, m. (*sono make a noise*), *sound, noise*.

sōnūs, ī, m. (*sono make a noise*), *noise.*

sōrōr, sōrōrīs, f., *sister.*

spātiūm, ī, n., *SPACE; opportunity.*

specto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*specio look*), *look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.*

spēs, spēi, f. *hope, expectation.*

spīrītūs, ūs, m. (*spiro breathe*), *breath; pride; lofty airs.*

spontē, f. abl. [*gen. spontis; no other cases found*], *of free will;*

suā sponte, *of his own free will.*

SPONTANEOUS.

stātuo, stātuērē, stātuī, stātūtūm (*status standing*), *set up; put; establish; decide. STATUTE.*

stērīlis, ē, unfruitful, STERILE.

stipendiūm, ī, n. (*stips contribution, pendo pay*), *tax, tribute.*

STIPEND.

sto, stārē, stētī, stātūm, stand; **nobis sanguine stat**, *it costs us blood. STATE, STATION.*

stōlīdūs, ā, ūm, foolish. STOLID.

strēnuūs, ā, ūm, bold, brave.

STRENUOUS.

stūdeo, stūdērē, stūduī, no sup., *be eager or zealous, desire.*

stūdium, ī, n. (*studeo be eager*), *zeal, desire. STUDY.*

suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsūm, advise, PER-SUADE.

sūb, prep. w. abl., *under, beneath; in the time of; sub monte, at the foot of a mountain.*

sub-dūco dūcērē, duxī, duc-

tūm (*sub from under, duco draw*), *draw from under; withdraw; take away.*

sub-eo, irē, ivī and iī, itūm (*sub under, eo go*), *go under; endure.*

sūbīto, adv. (*subītus sudden*), *suddenly, quickly.*

sub-lēvo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*sub from beneath, levo lift up*), *raise up, support; help, aid.*

sub-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm (*sub a little, rideo laugh*), *smile.*

sub-sīlio, sīlīrē, sīluī and sīlīī, no sup. (*sub up, salio leap*), *leap up, jump.*

sub-vēho, vēhērē, vexī, vectūm (*sub from below, veho carry*), *bring up, transport.*

suc-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*sub behind, cedo come*).

SUCCEED, follow. SUCCESSION.

Suēvī, ōrūm, m. pl., *a powerful people of Germany.*

sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves [*see 112*]. **SUICIDE. See caedo.**

Sullā, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman.*

sūm, essē, fui, be [*see 62*].

summā, ae, f. (*summus highest*), *amount, sum total. SUM.*

summūs, ā, ūm, highest [*positive supērus, comparative superior, superlative suprēmus and summus*].

sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sump-tūm, take, AS-SUME. AS-SUMPTION.

sūpēr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon*. SUPER-.

sūpērbio, **īrē**, no perf. nor sup. (*superbus proud*), *be proud of*.

sūpērbūs, **ā, ūm**, *proud*; **Superbūs**, **ī**, m., *the Proud*, a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

sūpēriōr, **sūpēriūs**, *upper, higher*; *former*. SUPERIOR. See **sūpērus**.

sūpērūs, **ā, ūm** [comp. **superior**, superl. **suprēmus** or **summus**] (*super over, above*), *above, on high, upper*.

sūpēro, **ārē, āvi, ātūm** (*super over*), *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue*.

sūper-sūm, **essē, fuī** (*super over, beyond*; *sum be*), *be over*; *survive*.

supplīcīum, **ī**, n., *punishment*.

sus-cīpio, **cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm** (*sub under, capio take*), *undertake, take upon*; *engage in*; *receive*; **sibi suscipēre**, *to take upon one's self*.

suspīcio, **ōnīs**, f. (*suspīcor suspect*), SUSPICION.

suspīcor, **ārī, ātūs sūm** (*suspicio fr. sub secretly, specio look at*), SUSPECT.

sus-tīneo, **tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm** (*sub up, teneo hold*), *hold up, SUSTAIN*; *endure*; *withstand*.

suūs, **ā, ūm** (*sui*), *his, his own*; *her, her own*; *its, its own*; *their, their own*.

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tābūlā, ae, f., *board*; *writing-table*; *muster-roll*. TABLE.

tālentūm, **ī**, n., a TALENT, a sum of money equal to about \$1200.

tām, adv., *so, so very*.

tāmēn, adv., *nevertheless*; *yet, still*.

tamquām and **tanquām**, adv. (*tam so, quam as*), *as much as*; *as if*.

Tānāquīl, **īlīs**, f., wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tandēm, adv., *at length*; *at last*.

tantūs, **ā, ūm**, *so great, such, so large*.

tardītās, **ātīs**, f. (*tardus slow*), *slowness, TARDINESS*; *heaviness*.

Tarpēiā, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pronounced *Tar-pé-ya*], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēiūs, **ā, ūm**, *Tarpeian* [pronounced *Tar-pé-yan*]; **mons Tarpēius**, *the Tarpeian Rock*, the name of a rock on the Capitoline hill from which criminals were thrown headlong; *the Tarpeian Mount*.

Tarquīniī, **ōrūm**, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquīniūs, **ī**, m., *Tarquin*, the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings.

tectŭm, **i**, n. (*tego to cover*),
roof.

tĕlŭm, **i**, n., *weapon, missile*.

tempĕro, **arĕ**, **avĭ**, **atŭm** (*tempus a piece cut off*), *abstain*.
TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, **ātis**, f. (*tempus time*), *storm*; TEMPEST.

templŭm, **i**, n., TEMPLE.

tempŭs, **tempōris**, n., *time*.
TEMPORAL.

tĕneo, **tĕnĕrĕ**, **tĕnuĭ**, **tentŭm**,
hold; have, possess; keep; re-
strain; mĕmōriā tĕnĕrĕ, to
remember.

tĕnĕr, **tĕnĕrā**, **tĕnĕrŭm**, TEN-
DER, *delicate*.

tento, **arĕ** **avĭ**, **atŭm**, *try*. TEN-
TATIVE.

terrā, ae, f., *earth, land, ground*.
TERRACE.

terreo, **ĕrĕ**, **uĭ**, **itŭm**, *frighten*,
TERRIFY.

terrĭto, **arĕ**, **avĭ**, **atŭm** (*terreo*
frighten), *terrify*.

terrĭtōriŭm, **i**, n. (*terra earth*),
TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (*tertius third*), *the*
third time.

testis, **testis**, m. and f., *witness*.
TESTIFY.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a
Roman praenomen.

Tĭbĕris, **is** [acc. **im**, abl. **i**], m.,
the Tiber, a river in Italy on
which Rome is situated.

Tĭbĕriŭs, **i**, m. See **Ti**.

tĭmeo, **ĕrĕ**, **uĭ**, no supine, *to*
fear.

tĭmĭdŭs, **ā**, **ŭm**, (*timeo to fear*),
TIMID; *cowardly*.

tĭmōr, **tĭmōris**, m., *fear*. TIM-
OROUS.

tintinnābŭlŭm, **i**, n. (*tintinno*
to ring), *bell*.

Tĭtŭs, **i**, m. See **T**.

tollo, **tollĕrĕ**, **sustŭlĭ**, **sublā-**
tŭm, *lift, raise; pick up; re-*
move, take away; destroy.

tōnitrŭs, **ŭs**, m., and **tōnitrŭ**, n.
indecl. (*tono to thunder*), *thun-*
der.

tōno, **tōnārĕ**, **tōnuĭ**, **tōnĭtŭm**,
thunder.

tōtŭs, **ā**, **ŭm**, *whole, entire*.

trā-dŭco and **trans-dŭco**, **dŭ-**
cĕrĕ, **duxĭ**, **ductŭm** (*trans*
across, duco lead), *lead across*.
lead; lead from one place to an-
other. TRADUCE.

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over;*
beyond. TRANS.

trans-eo, **irĕ**, **iĭ**, **itŭm** (*trans*
across, over; eo go), *go across or*
over; cross. TRANSIT, TRAN-
SITIVE, TRANSIENT, TRANSI-
TION.

trans-fĕro, **ferrĕ**, **tŭlĭ**, **lātŭm**
(*trans across, fero bear*), *bear*
across; TRANSFER. TRANSLA-
TION.

trans-ĭgo, **ĭgĕrĕ**, **ĕgĭ**, **actŭm**
(*trans through to the end, ago*
bring), *bring to an end; spend*.
TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-sĭlio or **trans-sĭlio**, **sĭlĭrĕ**,
sĭlĭvĭ, **sĭlĭi**, or **sĭluĭ**, **sultŭm**
(*trans over, salio leap*), *leap over*.

trans-porto, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (trans across, porto carry), carry across, TRANSPORT.

TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triā [see 108], three.

Trēvīrī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Northern Gaul.

tribūnūs, ī, m. (tribus tribe), TRIBUNE; **tribūnī mīlītūm**, military tribunes, of which officers each legion had six.

tribuo, tribuērē, tribuī, tribūtūm, give, grant, bestow. **TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTION.**

trīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (triginta thirty), thirtieth.

trīduūm, ī, n. (tres three, dies day), three days.

trīgēmīnī, ōrūm, m. pl. (tres three gignor be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., thirty.

tristīs, tristē, sad, sorrowful.

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātūm (triumphus a triumph), to triumph.

Trōjā, ae, f., Troy, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.

Trōjānūs, ā, ūm, Trojan.

tū, pers. pron., thou, you [see 112].

tūbā, ae, f. (akin to tubus, a tube), trumpet.

tūbīcēn, īnīs, m. (tuba trumpet, cano to sound), trumpeter.

Tulingī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tullīūs, ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tulliā, ae, f., daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullūs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

tūm, adv., then; also.

tūmūlūs, ī, m. (tumeo swell), mound.

turrīs, turrīs, f., tower. **TURRET.**

tūtōr, ōrīs, m. (tueor protect), guardian; **TUTOR.**

tūtūs, ā, ūm (tueor protect), safe.

tuūs, ā, ūm, poss. pron. (tu thou, you), thy, thine; your, yours.

tŷrannūs, ī, m., monarch; tyrant.

U.

ūbēr, ūbērīs, n, udder; teat.

ūbī, adv., when, where.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultūs sūm, take revenge; avenge.

ullūs, ā, ūm, any [see 24].

ultēriōr, ultēriūs (ulter that is beyond), farther [see 85]. **ULTERIOR.**

ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond. **ULTRA-**

ūnā, adv. (unus one and the same), at the same time; in company, together.

undē, adv., from which place, whence.

undīque, adv. (undē, que), from all parts; on all sides.

ūnūs, ā, ūm, one, single; one and the same; pl., alone [see 24].

urbs, urbīs, f., city. SUB-URBS.
ūsūs, ūs, m. (utor use), USE;
advantage.

usquē, adv., even; till.

ūt and ūtī, conj., that, in order
that; as.

ūtēr, utrā, utrūm, which of two,
which [see 24].

ūterquē, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē;
gen. utriusquē, etc. [declined
like ūtēr, see 24], each, both.

ūtīlīs, ūtīlē (utor use, suffix ilis
denoting capability), useful, ben-
eficial, profitable.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsūs sūm, USE, make
use of; adopt.

utrūm, adv. (uter which of two),
whether.

uvā, ae, f., a grape; a bunch of
grapes.

uxōr, uxōrīs, f., wife.

V.

vāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, be unoccu-
 pied. VACATE, VACANT, VA-
CATION.

vādūm, ī, n. (vado go), ford,
shallow.

vāgītūs, ūs, m. (vagio cry,
squall), crying, squalling.

vāgor, ārī, ātūs sūm (vagus
roaming about), roam about,
wander about. VAGA-BOND.

vāleo, ērē, uī, itūm, PRE-VAIL.

vallūm, ī, n. (vallus the line of
palisades, stakes, set about an in-
trenchment), rampart, intrench-
ment.

vasto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (vastus
empty, desolate), lay waste, DE-
VASTATE.

vectīgāl, vectīgālīs, n. (veho
carry), toll paid for carrying
goods into a country; tax; rev-
enue.

vēhementēr, vēhementiūs, vē-
hēmentissimē, adv. (vehē-
mens violent), violently, severely;
furiously; VEHEMENTLY.

vēl, conj., or; vēl — vēl, either
— or.

vendo, vendērē, vendīdī, ven-
dītūm (venum sale, do give),
sell. VEND.

vēnio, vēnīrē, vēnī, ventūm,
come; arrive at.

verbēr, ērīs, n., blow. RE-VER-
BER-ATE.

verbūm, ī, n., word. VERB,
VERBAL.

vēreor, vērērī, vērītūs sūm,
fear.

vērō, adv. (verus true), in truth,
truly; indeed; but.

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with;
live upon; eat.

Vēsontio, ōnīs, f., the chief
town of the Sequāni.

vespēr, vespērīs and vespēr, ī,
m., evening star; evening; ad
vespērūm, till evening. VES-
PER, VESPER.

Vestā, ae, f., Vesta, the goddess
of the hearth, to whom a per-
petual fire was kept burning.

Vestālīs, ē, of or belonging to
Vesta, Vestal.

vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, poss. pron., *your, yours*.

vētūs, gen. **vētēris**, *old, long standing, ancient*. VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.

vexillūm, ī, n. (*velum sail*), *standard; flag*.

vexo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*veho carry*), *trouble, annoy, harass*. VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viā, ae, f., *way, road; path; march*.

vīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (*viginti twenty*), *twentieth*.

victor, ōris, m., *conqueror*.

victōriā, ae, f., VICTORY.

vīcūs, ī, m., *village*

video, vīdērē, vīdī, vīsūm, *see*.

videor, vīdērī, vīsūs sūm, pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good or proper*.

vīgīliā, ae, f. (*vigīlo to watch*), *watch; de tertia vigilia, in the third watch*. See LN. LV., NOTE 5.

vīgintī, num. adj. indecl., *twenty*.

vinco, vincērē, vīcī, victūm, *conquer*.

vincūlūm, ī, n. (*vincio bind*), *a chain; in vincūla conjicere, to throw into prison*.

vindīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *claim*.

VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vīr, vīri, m., *man; hero; husband*.

See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.

virgō, īnis, f. (*vireo flourish, bloom*), VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtīs, f. (*vir man, hero*), *valor, courage*; VIRTUE.

vīs, vīs, [acc. **vīm**, dat. and abl. **vī**; pl., **vīrēs, vīriūm, vīribūs**, etc.] f., *strength, power*.

vītā, ae, f. (*vivo live*), *life*.

VITAL.

vītīs, īs, f., *vine*.

vīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *shun, avoid*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly*.

vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *call, summon, invite*. VOCATION, VOCATIVE.

vōlo, vellē, vōluī, *be WILLING; wish; desire* [see 125].

vōluntās, ātīs, f. (*volo to wish*), *wish, consent*. VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see 112].

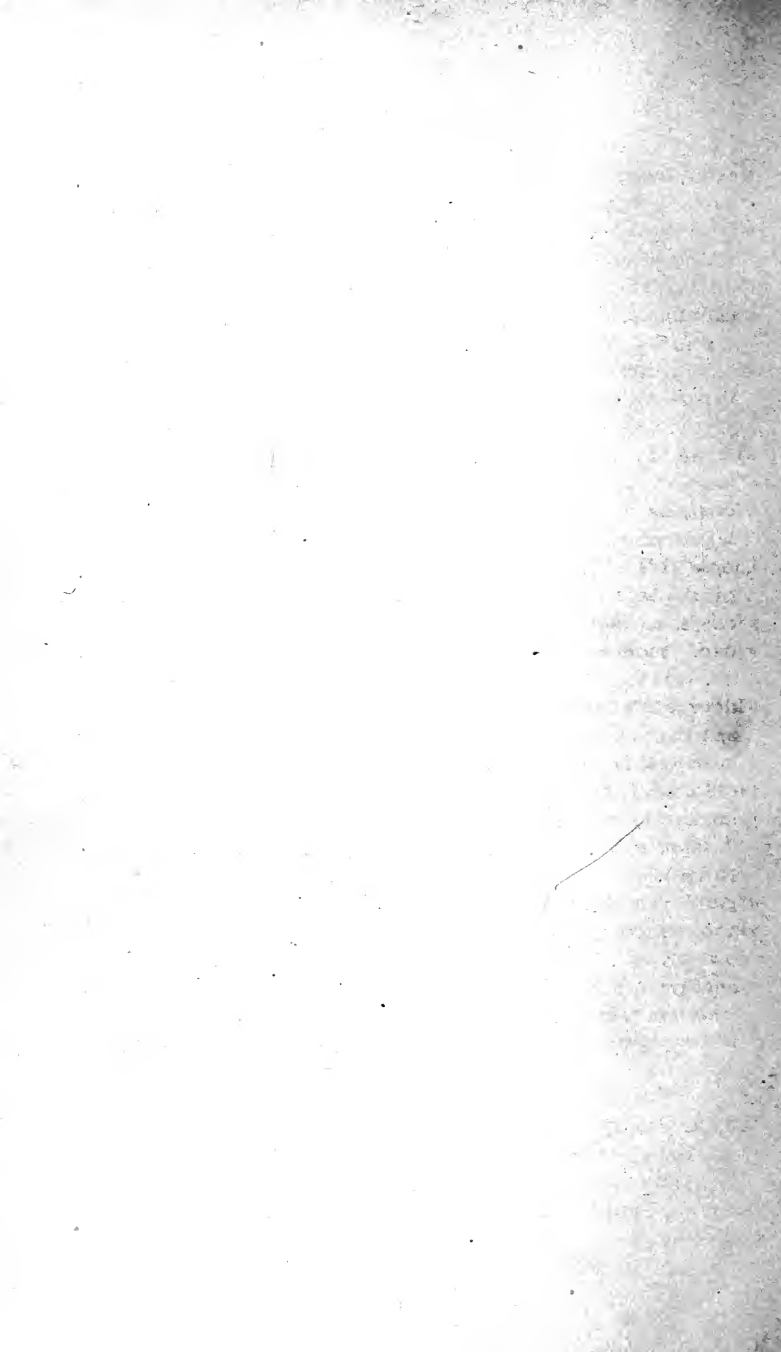
vox, vōcīs, f., VOICE. VOCAL.

vulnēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*vulnus wound*), *to wound*.

vulnūs, vulnērīs, *a wound*.

VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, īs, f., *fox*.



II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, possum.
about, w. numerals, ad, circiter.
abundance, copia.
accuse, accūso.
across, trans.
adopt, utor.
advancing, veniens.
advise, moneo.
affair, res.
after, prep. post; conj. postquam.
afterwards, postea.
against, in, contra.
aid, auxilium; to aid, juvo.
all, every, omnis; pl. omnes;
all, the whole, totus.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, prope.
alone, solus.
also, etiam.
although, quum, etsi.
ambassador, legātus.
among, apud, inter, in.
and, et, atque, que; both — and,
et — et.
animal, animal.
announce, nuncio.
any, quis, ullus.
anything, quid, aliquid (116, a).
appoint, creo.

arms, arma.
army, exercitus, agmen.
around, circum.
arrive, pervenio.
arrival, adventus.
ascertain, cognosco.
as soon as, postquam; as soon as
possible, quam primum.
ask, quaero; ask for, rogo.
assemble, convenio.
assembly, concilium.
assist, adsum.
at home, domi.
attack, impētus; to attack, op-
pugno.
attempt, conor.
at Caesar's feet, Caesari ad pe-
des.
auxiliaries, auxilia.
avoid, vito.
away, take away, tollo.

B.

bad, malus.
baggage, impedimenta.
bank, ripa.
battle, proelium, pugna.
be, sum; be present, adsum; be
from or distant, absum.
beautiful, pulcher.

because, quod, quia.

become, fio; become master of, potior.

before, ante, pro; priusquam.

beg for, peto.

beginning, initium.

besiege, oppugno.

best, optimus.

betake myself, me confero, me recipio.

better, melior.

between, inter.

big, magnus.

bold, audax.

born, be born, nascor.

both, uterque; both — and, et — et.

boy, puer.

brave, fortis.

bravely, fortiter.

break up (camp), (castra) moveo.

bridge, pons.

bring, fero; bring upon, inféro.

broad, latus.

brother, frater.

building, aedificium.

burn, incendo, cremo; burn up, exūro, combūro.

but if, sin.

buy, emo.

by, a, ab; by no means, minime.

C.

call, summon, voco; call, name, appello; call together, convoco; call to mind, commemoro.

camp, castra; pitch a camp, castra pono; break up camp, castra moveo.

can, possum.

capture, expugno.

carry, carry on, gero; carry on war, bellum gero; bello.

cart, carrus.

cause, causa.

cavalry, equitatus; of cavalry, equester.

cavalryman, eques.

censure, accuso.

character, natura.

chief, princeps.

choose, creo.

citadel, arx.

citizen, civis.

city, urbs.

cliff, rupes.

cold, frigus.

collect, comperto, conféro, condūco.

come, venio; come together, convenio; come to, pervenio.

comitium, comitium.

command, be in command of, praesum.

company, in company, una.

complain, queror.

conceal, occulto.

concerning, de.

confidence, fides.

congratulate, gratulor.

conquer, vinco.

consent, voluntas.

consider, habeo, duco.

conspiracy, conjuratio.

consul, consul; in the consulship of Caesar, Caesare consule.

continually, continenter.

corn, frumentum.

could, past tense of *possum*.
 council, *concilium*.
 counsel, *consilium*.
 country, fatherland, *patria*.
 cowardly, *ignāvus*.
 cross, *transeo*.

D.

danger, *pericŭlum*.
 dangerous, *periculōsus*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 dawn, at the earliest dawn, *prima luce*.
 day, *dies*; at daybreak, *prima luce*; on the day before, *pridie*.
 death, *mors*.
 deceive, *decipio*.
 decide, *statuo*.
 decision, *judicium*.
 deep, *altus*.
 defend, *defendo*.
 delay, *moror*.
 deliberate, *delibĕro*.
 demand, *postŭlo*, *posco*.
 depart, *discĕdo*.
 departure, *profectio*.
 describe, *designo*.
 design, *consilium*.
 desire, *studium*, *cupiditas*.
 desirous, *cupidus*.
 destroy, *deleo*.
 destruction, *perniciēs*.
 determine, *judico*.
 devastate, *vasto*.
 die, *morior*.
 differ, *diffĕro*.
 difficulty, *angustiae*; with difficulty, *vix*.

dig, *fodio*.
 direction, *pars*.
 distance, *spatium*.
 distant, be distant, *absum*; most distant, *extrĕmus*.
 distinguished, *nobilis*.
 disturb, *commoveo*.
 ditch, *fossa*.
 divulge, *enuncio*.
 do, *facio*.
 draw, *duco*.
 dwell, *incŭlo*.

E.

each, to each other, *inter se*.
 easily, *facile*.
 easy, *facilis*; very easy, *perfacilis*.
 either — or, *aut — aut*.
 elect, *creo*.
 embassy, *legatio*.
 empire, *imperium*.
 empty, *influo*.
 encamp, *castra pono*; consido
 encompass, *contineo*.
 encourage, *confirmo*.
 end, *finis*.
 endeavor, *nitor*.
 endure, *subeo*.
 enemy, *hostis*.
 enervate, *effemino*.
 entire, *totus*.
 entreat, *imploro*, *oro*.
 equal, *par*, *aequus*.
 establish, *confirmo*.
 even, not even, *ne — quidem*.
 excel, *praecĕdo*, *praesto*.
 exhort, *hortor*.
 expectation, *spes*.

extraordinary, incredibīlis.
eye, oculūs.

F.

far, by far, longe; very far, longissīme.
farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, socer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveo.
fear, timor; to fear, timeo, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quindēcim.
fifth, quintus.
fight, pugno.
find, reperio.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, prima nocte.
five, quinque.
flight, fuga.
flee, fugio.
flow, fluo.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pes; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte.
for, de w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hoc, eo.
foraging, pabulatio.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
former, pristīnus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, edūco.

fortify, munio.
fortune, fortūna.
forward, send forward, praemitto; move forward, promoveo.
free, liber; of one's own free will, sua sponte.
friend, amicus.
friendly, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, a, ab; from out of, e, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, facio.
furthermost, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperātor.
generosity, liberalitas.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, depōno.
girl, puella.
give, do; give orders, impēro; give satisfaction, satisfacio.
glory, gloria.
go, eo; go forth, exeo.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exīgo.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdo.
great, magnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custos.

H.

*happen, accīdo, fio.**happy, felix.**harass, vexo.**hasten, matūro, contendo, ac-
curro.**have, habeo.**he says, dicit.**hear, audio.**height, altitūdo.**help, juvo.**hem in, contineo.**high, altus.**highest, summus.**hill, collis.**hindrance, impedimentum.**his, his own, suus.**hither, citerior.**hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo;**hold a conference, collōquor.**home, at home, domi; homeward,
domum; from home, domo.**hope, spes.**horse, equus.**hostage, obses.**hour, hora.**house, domus.**hurl, conjicio.**husband, vir.*

I.

*I, ego.**if, si.**implore, implōro.**import, importo.**in, into, in.**incite, facio.**influence, auctoritas.**influenced, adductus.**inform Caesar, Caesārem cer-
tiōrem facio.**infuse, injicio.**inquire, quaero.**insult, contumelia.**intervene, intersum.**invite, arcesso.*

J.

just, justus.

K.

*keep, teneo; keep from, pro-
hibeo.**kill, caedo, interficio.**kindness, beneficium.**king, rex.**know, scio; know, find out, co-
gnosco; not know, nescio.*

L.

*land, terra.**language, lingua.**large, magnus.**late in the day, multo die.**law, lex, jus.**lay waste, vasto.**lead, duco; lead forth, edūco.**leader, dux.**leave, relinquo.**left, sinister.**legate, legātus.**legion, legio.**letter, epistōla.*

levy on, **impōno**.
 lieutenant, **legātus**.
 like, **similis**.
 line of battle, **acies**.
 little, **paulus**; a little, **paulo**.
 lofty airs, **spirītus**.
 long, for a long time, **diu**; longer,
diutius.
 look at, **intueor**; look out for,
prospicio.
 love, **amor**; to love, **amo**.

M.

make, **facio**; make or deliver a
 speech, **oratiōnem habeo**;
 make haste, **matūro**; make
 upon, **infēro**.
 man, **vir, homo**.
 manner, in such a manner, **ita**.
 many, **multi**.
 march, **iter**; to march, **iter facere**.
 marriage, **matrimonium**; to give
 in marriage, **in matrimonium**
dare.
 master, become master of, **potior**.
 means, by no means, **minīme**; by
 means of, see **54**.
 memory, **memoria**.
 mile, **mille passuum**.
 mind, **ānīmus, mens**.
 misfortune, **incommōdum**.
 missile, **telum**.
 month, **mensis**.
 more, **magis, amplius**; be more
 willing, **malo**.
 mother, **mater**.
 mountain, **mons**.

move, **moveo**; move forward, **pro-**
moveo.
 much, **multus**.
 multitude, **multitūdo**.
 murder, **caedes**; to murder, **cae-**
do, occīdo.
 my, my own, **meus**.

N.

narrow pass, **angustiae**.
 nature, **natūra**.
 near, **circum, ad**.
 nearest, **proxīmus**.
 nearly, **fere**.
 neighbors, **finitīmi**.
 neither — nor, **neque — neque**.
 nine, **novem**.
 no, none, **nullus**.
 nobility, **nobilitas**.
 noble, **nobilis**.
 not, **non**; not — even, **ne —**
quidem.
 none the less, **nihīlo minus**.
 nothing, **nihil**.
 notice, **animadverto**.
 number, **numērus**.

O.

obtain, **obtineo, consēquor**
 occupy, **occūpo**.
 often, **saepe**.
 old, **vetus, natus**.
 on, upon, **in**.
 on account of, **propter**.
 on all sides, **undīque**.
 on the day before, **pridie**.
 one, **unus**.

one by one, singŭli.

one party — the other, altĕri — altĕri.

opinion, sententia.

opportunity, potestas, facultas.

or, aut, vel, an.

order, give orders, impĕro.

other, alius; to each other, from each other, inter se.

ought, oportet, debeo. See also LN. LXX.

our, our own, noster.

out, set out, proficiscor; out of, e, ex.

overcome, supĕro.

own, his own, suus; my own, meus; your own, tuus, vester; their own, suus.

P.

pace, passus.

part, pars.

party, one party — the other, altĕri — altĕri.

pass the winter, hiĕmo.

peace, pax.

people, popŭlus.

peril, pericŭlum.

persist, persevĕro.

persuade, persuadeo.

pitch a camp, castra pono.

place, locus; place, put, pono.

plan, consilium.

please, placeo.

pledge, fides.

poor, pauper.

possession, possessio; get possession of, potior.

power, royal power, sovereign power, regnum.

practicable, facilis.

practice, exercitatio.

praetor, praetor.

prepare, compĕro.

present, be present, adsum.

press, press upon, premo.

prevail upon, permoveo.

prevent, retineo.

price, pretium.

private, privĕtus.

proceed, procĕdo.

promise, polliceor.

protection, praesidium.

province, provincia.

provisions, commeĕtus.

pursue, persĕquor.

put off, confĕro.

R.

ready, parĕtus.

rear of an army, agmen novissimum.

reason, causa.

recall to mind, reminiscor.

recent, recens.

refinement, humanitas.

reign, regno.

rejoice, laetor.

relief, subsidium.

remain, maneo.

remaining, reliquus.

remember, memĭni; memoriā teneo.

remembrance, memoria.

remove, moveo, removeo.

reply, responsum; to reply, respondēo.
report, enuncio.
resolve, constituo.
rest, the rest, cetēri; rest of, reliquus.
restrain, retineo, prohibeo
return, revertor, revento.
revenue, vectigal.
reward, praemium.
rich, dives.
ridge, jugum.
right, dexter.
ripe, matūrus.
river, flūmen.
road, via.
rout, pello.
route, iter.
royal power, regnum.
ruin, perniciēs.

S.

sad, tristis.
sake, for the sake of, causā.
same, the same, idem.
satisfaction, give satisfaction, satisfacio.
satisfy, satisfacio.
say, dico; he says, dicit.
sea, mare.
see, video.
seem, videor; it seems good, videtur.
seize, occūpo.
select, deligo.
sell, vendo.
senator, senātor.
send, mitto; send forward, praemitto.

separate, divido.
set on fire, incendo.
set out, proficiscor.
severely, graviter, vehementer.
ship, navis.
short, brevis; shortest way or route, proximum iter.
show, probo.
shun, vito.
side, this side of, citra.
sides, on all sides, undique.
sight, conspectus.
signal, signum.
since, quum.
single, unus.
sister, soror.
skilful, peritus.
slave, servus.
slavery, servitus.
small, parvus.
so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so great, tantus.
soldier, miles.
some, some one, aliquis. See 116, a.
son, filius; son-in-law, gener.
soon, matūre.
sovereignty, sovereign power, regnum.
Spain, Hispania.
speak, loquor.
speech, oratio; make, deliver a speech, orationem habeo.
stand, sto.
state, civitas.
station, collōco, constituo.
stay, maneo.
storm, expugno.
strengthen, confirmo.

strive, **nitor**.
such, **tantus**.
sufficient, *sufficiently*, **satis**; *with sufficient ease*, **satis commōde**.
suitable, **idoneus**, **commōdus**.
summer, **aestas**.
summon, **voco**, **convoco**.
sunset, **occāsus solis**.
supply, **copia**; *supplies*, **res frumentaria**, **commeātus**.
surround, **cingo**.
survive, **supersum**.
suspicion, **suspicio**.
swiftly, **celeriter**.

T.

take, *capture*, **capio**, **expugno**;
take away, **tollo**; *take to one's self*, **sumo**.
tarry, **moror**.
teach, **doceo**.
ten, **decem**.
tend, **pertineo**.
territory, **ager**, **fines**.
than, **quam**.
that, **ille**.
that, *in order that*, **ut**; *after verbs of fearing*, **nē**.
that not, **nē**; *after verbs of fearing*, **ut**.
the same, **idem**.
there, *in that place*, **ibi**.
their, *their own*, **suus**.
they, *them*, see **LN. LVIII.**
NOTE 2.
thing, **res**.
think, **puto**, **abītror**.

third, **tertius**.
this, **hic**.
those, **illi**.
three days, **triduum**.
three hundred, **trecenti**.
through, **per**.
throw one's self, **se projicere**.
till evening, **ad vesp̄rum**.
time, **tempus**; *for a long time*, **diu**.
to, **ad**.
to-day, **hodie**.
together, *come together*, **convenio**.
tongue, **lingua**.
top of the mountain, **summus mons**.
towards, **ad**; *towards the north*, **sub septemtrionibus**.
tower, **turris**.
town, **oppidum**.
trader, **mercātor**.
train up, **instituo**.
tribute, **stipendium**.
troops, **copiae**.
try, **conor**.
twenty, **viginti**.
two days, **biduum**.

U.

under, **sub**.
unoccupied, *be unoccupied*, **vaco**.
until, **dum**.
unwilling, *be unwilling*, **nolo**.
upon, **in**.
upper, **superior**.
urge, **hortor**.
use, **utor**; *make use of*, **utor**.
useful, **utilis**.

V.

valor, virtus.

very, valde; very easy, perfacilis; very great, maximus; very is often rendered by ipse: e. g. the very city, urbs ipsa. vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, ad w. name of town in acc. victory, victoria.

W.

wage, gero.

wages, merces.

wagon, carrus.

wait, exspecto.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, desum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vasto.

watch, vigilia; in the third watch, de tertia vigilia.

way, via.

we, nos. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, copiosus.

weapon, telum.

weep, fleo; weeping, flens.

what? quid?

what sort of a? qui? See LN.

LX.

when, quum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, qui; who? quis?

whole, totus.

why? quid?

wide, latus.

willing, be willing, volo.

win, concilio.

wing of an army, cornu.

winter, pass the winter, hiemo.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volo.

with, cum.

withdraw, se recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineo.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

wound, vulnus; to wound, vulnero.

write, scribo.

wrong, injuria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, jugum.

you, tu, vos. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolescens.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS
OF
S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

MAILING PRICE.

BOISE — FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. A new edition.
Revised by J. G. PATTENGILL. Adapted to Goodwin's, and to Hadley-Allen's Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Xenophon's Anabasis. \$1.25.

BOISE — FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD.
With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley-Allen. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.00.

BOISE — FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley Allen. Revised Edition. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

BOISE—EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the Grammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Hadley-Allen, and Kühner. A Sequel to "Jones's Greek Prose Composition." By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D. \$1.25.

BOISE AND FREEMAN — SELECTIONS FROM VARIOUS GREEK AUTHORS. For the First Year in College. With Explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D., and J. C. FREEMAN, M.A. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.

CHITTENDEN — ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. A Preparation for Rhetoric. By LUCY A. CHITTENDEN. 12mo. Cloth. 60 cents.

"Progressive, suggestive, and thoroughly practical." — *Prof. E. E. Smith, Purdue University, Ind.*

"After thorough trial in the class I unhesitatingly commend it." — *F. S. Hotaling, Prin. High School, Framingham, Mass.*

"As an elementary book, I know no work equal to it." — *A. Martin, LL.D., Pres. of De Pauw University, Ind.*

"It ought to be used in every high school." — *A. V. Jewett, Supt. of Schools, Abilene, Kan.*

"Between 600 and 700 copies will be required for immediate use." — *E. A. Paul, Prin. of High School, Washington, D.C.*

CROSS — ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. Writing by Principles instead of Arbitrary Signs, for General Use and Verbatim Reporting. By J. GEO. CROSS, A.M. Complete in one volume. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.

D'OOGÉ — DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Extracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By M. L. D'OOGÉ, Ph.D. Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. Cloth. \$1.50.

Educational Publications of S. C. Griggs & Co.

JONES — EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Hadley and Allen, Goodwin, and Kühner and Taylor, and a full English-Greek vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, M.A., Professor in the University of Michigan. 12mo. Half leather. \$1.00.

JONES — FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Chase, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, M.A. 12mo. Half leather. \$1.25.

JONES — EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, M.A. \$1.00.

MORRIS — MANUAL OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE. Comprising biographical and critical notices of principal Greek and Roman authors, illustrative extracts from their works, etc. By CHARLES MORRIS. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

PETERSON — NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND READER. With a Vocabulary designed for American Students of the Norwegian-Danish language. By Rev. C. I. P. PETERSON, Professor of Scandinavian Literature. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

STEVENS — SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Introductions and Explanatory Notes. By W. A. STEVENS, A. M. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

WELSH — ESSENTIALS OF GEOMETRY. By A. H. WELSH, Professor in Ohio State University. 8vo. Cloth. \$1.50.

WELSH — DEVELOPMENT OF ENGLISH LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE. By Prof. A. H. WELSH. University Edition. Complete in 1 vol., unabridged. Crown 8vo. Cloth. \$3.00.

"It is a work greatly needed. In plan and execution it seems to me all that could be asked for." — *John G. Whittier.*

"Welsh' 'English Literature' is unsurpassed for usefulness." — *J. Ernest Whitney, Instructor in English in Yale College.*

WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL EXCURSIONS; or, The Rudiments of Geology for Young Learners. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL.D., Professor of Geology, etc., University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL STUDIES; or, Elements of Geology for High Schools, Colleges, Normal and other Schools. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL.D. One vol. 12mo. 540 pages, with 367 fine illustrations. \$3.00.

"It abounds with most excellent points and valuable information, and seems an American book beyond any other I have seen." — *Prof. A. P. Kelsey, Hamilton College, N. Y.*

"I find it full of admirable suggestions in the way of conducting instruction, and of presenting the topics of geology to a class." — *H. S. Williams, Prof. of Nat. Sci., Cornell University.*

Descriptive Circulars sent on application. Books will be mailed, postage paid, on receipt of price.



Verbs of naming, calling, choosing, regarding,
showing, & the like taken in the active voice
voice & passives of the same thing

Verbs of asking, teaching, demanding & commanding
take the accusative case of the person & the
of the thing.

12. 11.
10. 10.
10. 10.
10. 10.

YB 36249

562547

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

